

MCTS EXAM

70-515

Web Applications Development with Microsoft® .NET Framework 4



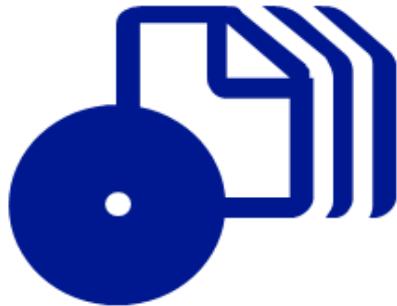
Tony Northrup
and Mike Snell

SELF-PACED

Training Kit

• • • • •

How to access your CD files



The print edition of this book includes a CD. To access the CD files, go to <http://aka.ms/627406/files>, and look for the Downloads tab.

Note: Use a desktop web browser, as files may not be accessible from all ereader devices.

Questions? Please contact: mspinput@microsoft.com

Microsoft Press

MCTS Self-Paced Training Kit (Exam 70-515): Web Applications Development with Microsoft® .NET Framework 4

**Tony Northrup
Mike Snell**

PUBLISHED BY
Microsoft Press
A Division of Microsoft Corporation
One Microsoft Way
Redmond, Washington 98052-6399

Copyright © 2010 by Tony Northrup and Mike Snell

All rights reserved. No part of the contents of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without the written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010933008

ISBN: 978-0-7356-2740-6

5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 QGT 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed and bound in the United States of America.

Microsoft Press books are available through booksellers and distributors worldwide. For further information about international editions, contact your local Microsoft Corporation office or contact Microsoft Press International directly at fax (425) 936-7329. Visit our Web site at www.microsoft.com/mspress. Send comments to: tkinput@microsoft.com.

Microsoft and the trademarks listed at <http://www.microsoft.com/about/legal/en/us/IntellectualProperty/Trademarks/EN-US.aspx> are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies. All other marks are property of their respective owners.

The example companies, organizations, products, domain names, e-mail addresses, logos, people, places, and events depicted herein are fictitious. No association with any real company, organization, product, domain name, e-mail address, logo, person, place, or event is intended or should be inferred.

This book expresses the author's views and opinions. The information contained in this book is provided without any express, statutory, or implied warranties. Neither the authors, Microsoft Corporation, nor its resellers, or distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused either directly or indirectly by this book.

Acquisitions Editor: Martin DelRe

Developmental Editor: Karen Szall

Project Editor: Rosemary Caperton

Editorial Production: Online Training Solutions, Inc.

Technical Reviewer: Kenn Scribner; Technical Review services provided by Content Master, a member of CM Group, Ltd.

Cover: Tom Draper Design

Body Part No. X17-21595

[2012-03-02]

Exam 70-515: Web Applications Development with Microsoft .NET Framework 4

OBJECTIVE	CHAPTER	LESSON
1. DEVELOPING WEB FORMS PAGES		
1.1 Configure Web Forms pages.	Chapter 1	Lessons 2 and 3
1.2 Implement master pages and themes.	Chapter 2	Lessons 1 and 2
1.3 Implement globalization.	Chapter 6	Lesson 1
1.4 Handle page life cycle events.	Chapter 1 Chapter 3	Lesson 1 Lesson 1
1.5 Implement caching.	Chapter 2	Lesson 3
1.6 Manage state.	Chapter 3	Lessons 2 and 3
2. DEVELOPING AND USING WEB FORMS CONTROLS		
2.1 Validate user input.	Chapter 5	Lesson 1
2.2 Create page layout.	Chapter 5	Lessons 2 and 3
2.3 Implement user controls.	Chapter 7	Lesson 1
2.4 Implement server controls.	Chapter 4 Chapter 7	Lessons 1 and 2 Lesson 2
2.5 Manipulate user interface controls from code-behind.	Chapter 2 Chapter 4 Chapter 5	Lesson 1 Lessons 1 and 2 Lesson 2
3. IMPLEMENTING CLIENT-SIDE SCRIPTING AND AJAX		
3.1 Add dynamic features to a page by using JavaScript.	Chapter 9	Lesson 2
3.2 Alter a page dynamically by manipulating the DOM.	Chapter 9	Lesson 3
3.3 Handle JavaScript events.	Chapter 9	Lessons 2 and 3
3.4 Implement ASP.NET AJAX.	Chapter 9	Lesson 1
3.5 Implement AJAX by using jQuery.	Chapter 9	Lesson 3
4. CONFIGURING AND EXTENDING A WEB APPLICATION		
4.1 Configure authentication and authorization.	Chapter 13	Lesson 2
4.2 Configure providers.	Chapter 13	Lesson 1
4.3 Create and configure HttpHandlers and HttpModules.	Chapter 10	Lesson 1
4.4 Configure initialization and error handling.	Chapter 3 Chapter 8	Lesson 1 Lesson 1
4.5 Reference and configure ASMX and WCF services.	Chapter 10	Lessons 2 and 3
4.6 Configure projects and solutions, and reference assemblies.	Chapter 1	Lesson 3
4.7 Debug a Web application.	Chapter 8	Lessons 1 and 2
4.8 Deploy a Web application.	Chapter 8	Lesson 3
5. DISPLAYING AND MANIPULATING DATA		
5.1 Implement data-bound controls.	Chapter 12	Lesson 2
5.2 Implement DataSource controls.	Chapter 12	Lesson 1
5.3 Query and manipulate data by using LINQ.	Chapter 11	Lessons 1 and 2
5.4 Create and consume a data service.	Chapter 10	Lessons 2 and 3
5.5 Create and configure a Dynamic Data project.	Chapter 12	Lesson 3
6. DEVELOPING A WEB APPLICATION BY USING ASP.NET MVC 2		
6.1 Create custom routes.	Chapter 14	Lesson 2
6.2 Create controllers and actions.	Chapter 14	Lesson 2
6.3 Structure an ASP.NET MVC application.	Chapter 14	Lesson 1
6.4 Create and customize views.	Chapter 14	Lesson 2

Exam Objectives The exam objectives listed here are current as of this book's publication date. Exam objectives are subject to change at any time without prior notice and at Microsoft's sole discretion. Please visit the Microsoft Learning website for the most current listing of exam objectives:
<http://www.microsoft.com/learning/en/us/exam.aspx?ID=70-515#tab2>

For my partner, Chelsea Knowles

—TONY NORTHRUP

For my wife, Carrie Snell

—MIKE SNELL

Contents at a Glance

<i>Acknowledgments</i>	xxv
<i>Introduction</i>	xxvii
CHAPTER 1 Introducing ASP.NET 4	1
CHAPTER 2 Using Master Pages, Themes, and Caching	41
CHAPTER 3 Handling Events and Managing State	97
CHAPTER 4 Using Server Controls	161
CHAPTER 5 Input Validation and Site Navigation	227
CHAPTER 6 Globalization and Accessibility	291
CHAPTER 7 Creating Custom Web Controls	329
CHAPTER 8 Debugging and Deploying	387
CHAPTER 9 Working with Client-Side Scripting, AJAX, and jQuery	453
CHAPTER 10 Writing and Working with HTTP Modules and Web Services	551
CHAPTER 11 Connecting to and Querying Data with LINQ	623
CHAPTER 12 Working with Data Source Controls and Data-Bound Controls	685
CHAPTER 13 Implementing User Profiles, Authentication, and Authorization	787
CHAPTER 14 Creating Websites with ASP.NET MVC 2	831
 <i>Answers</i>	881
 <i>Index</i>	925
 <i>About the Authors</i>	967

Contents

Acknowledgments	xxv
Introduction	xxvii
Hardware Requirementsxxviii
Software Requirementsxxviii
Using the Companion Mediaxxviii
How to Install the Practice Tests	xxix
How to Use the Practice Tests	xxix
How to Uninstall the Practice Tests	xxx
Microsoft Certified Professional Programxxxi
Errata and Book Support.....	.xxxi
We Want to Hear from You.....	.xxxii
Stay in Touchxxxii
Chapter 1 Introducing ASP.NET 4	1
Before You Begin.....	2
Lesson 1: Understanding Web Communications	3
The Web Server's Role	4
The Web Browser's Role	5
Understanding the Role of HTTP	5
Lesson Summary	14
Lesson Review	14
Lesson 2: Creating a Website and Adding New Webpages.....	15
Creating Websites	15
Creating ASPX Pages	23
Website Compilation	28
Using Assemblies	29
Lesson Summary	31
Lesson Review	31

Lesson 3: Working with Web Configuration Files	32
Understanding the Configuration File Hierarchy	33
Processing the Configuration Files	34
Changes to .NET Framework 4 Configuration Files	34
Editing Configuration Files	34
Lesson Summary	38
Lesson Review	38
Case Scenarios	38
Case Scenario 1: Creating a New Website	39
Case Scenario 2: Placing Files in the Proper Folders	39
Suggested Practices	39
Create a New Website by Using Visual Studio 2010	39
Add a Webpage to the Website	40
Program a Web Application	40
Examine Settings for a Web Application	40
Take a Practice Test	40
Chapter 2 Using Master Pages, Themes, and Caching	41
Before You Begin	42
Lesson 1: Using Master Pages	43
Overview of Master and Content Pages	44
Creating a Master Page	45
Creating Content Pages	47
Attaching Master Pages to Content Pages	48
Referencing Custom Master Page Properties, Methods, and Controls from Content Pages	48
Creating Nested Master Pages	51
Dynamically Changing Master Pages	52
Lesson Summary	58
Lesson Review	59

Lesson 2: Using Themes	60
Themes Overview	60
Creating a Theme	61
Creating a Skin File	64
Adding a Cascading Style Sheet to Your Theme	65
Rules for Applying Themes	66
Applying a Theme Programmatically	67
Lesson Summary	73
Lesson Review	74
Lesson 3: Caching	75
Application Caching	75
Page Output Caching	80
Programmatically Invalidating Cached Pages	85
Lesson Summary	91
Lesson Review	91
Case Scenarios.....	92
Case Scenario 1: Providing Consistent Formatting for an External Web Application	92
Case Scenario 2: Improving the Performance of a Public Website	93
Suggested Practices	94
Implement Master Pages and Themes	94
Implement Caching	95
Take a Practice Test.....	95
Chapter 3 Handling Events and Managing State	97
Before You Begin.....	98
Lesson 1: Understanding the ASP.NET Life Cycle and Handling Events.....	99
The ASP.NET Application Life Cycle	100
Understanding the Life Cycle of an ASP.NET Webpage and Its Controls	103
Lesson Summary	119
Lesson Review	119

Lesson 2: Using Client-Side State Management	120
Choosing Client-Side or Server-Side State Management	121
View State	123
Hidden Fields	128
Cookies	129
Query Strings	133
Lesson Summary	141
Lesson Review	142
Lesson 3: Using Server-Side State Management.....	143
Application State	144
Session State	145
Lesson Summary	154
Lesson Review	154
Case Scenarios.....	155
Case Scenario 1: Selecting the Proper Events to Use	155
Case Scenario 2: Remembering User Credentials	156
Case Scenario 3: Analyzing Information for Individual Users and for All Users	156
Suggested Practices	157
Respond to Application and Session Events	157
Create Event Handlers for Pages and Controls	157
Manage State by Using Client-Based	
State Management Options	158
Manage State by Using Server-Based	
State Management Options	158
Maintain State by Using Database Technology	158
Take a Practice Test.....	159

Chapter 4 Using Server Controls **161**

Before You Begin.....	162
Lesson 1: Exploring Common Server Controls.....	163
Web Server Controls	163
The Label Control	167
The Literal Control	169

The TextBox Control	171
The CheckBox Control	172
The RadioButton Control	172
The DropDownList Control	173
The ListBox Control	175
The Button Control	175
HTML Server Controls	177
Lesson Summary	184
Lesson Review	185
Lesson 2: Exploring Specialized Server Controls	186
The Table, TableRow, and TableCell Controls	187
The Image Control	189
The ImageButton Control	191
The ImageMap Control	192
The Calendar Control	197
The FileUpload Control	202
The Panel Control	205
The MultiView and View Controls	207
The Wizard Control	210
The Xml Control	214
Lesson Summary	223
Lesson Review	223
Case Scenarios	224
Case Scenario 1: Determining the Type of Controls to Use	225
Case Scenario 2: Determining How to Prompt for Data	225
Case Scenario 3: Implementing a Calendar Solution	225
Suggested Practices	226
Implement Server Controls	226
Take a Practice Test	226

Chapter 5 Input Validation and Site Navigation	227
Before You Begin	228
Lesson 1: Performing Input Validation	228
Understanding the Validation Framework	229
Understanding the RequiredFieldValidator Control	232
Using the CompareValidator Control	232
Using the RangeValidator Control	234
Using the RegularExpressionValidator Control	234
The CustomValidator Control	235
Lesson Summary	244
Lesson Review	244
Lesson 2: Performing Site Navigation	245
Is Page Navigation Necessary?	246
Choosing a Method to Navigate Pages	246
Client-Side Navigation	247
Cross-Page Posting	248
Client-Side Browser Redirect	250
Server-Side Transfer	251
Using the Site Map Web Server Control	252
Lesson Summary	259
Lesson Review	259
Lesson 3: Using Web Parts	260
What Are Web Parts?	261
The WebParts Namespace	263
Defining Web Part Zones	264
Creating Web Parts	265
Enabling Users to Arrange and Edit Web Parts	266
Connecting Web Parts	269
Personalizing Web Parts	274
Lesson Summary	286
Lesson Review	286

Case Scenarios.....	287
Case Scenario 1: Determining the Proper Validation Controls to Implement on a User Name	288
Case Scenario 2: Implementing a Site Map	288
Case Scenario 3: Meeting Customization Requirements for an Internal Insurance Application	288
Suggested Practices	289
Validate User Input	289
Create Page Layout	290
Take a Practice Test.....	290
Chapter 6 Globalization and Accessibility	291
Before You Begin.....	292
Lesson 1: Configuring Globalization and Localization.....	292
About ASP.NET Resources	293
Using Local Resource Files	293
Using Global Resources	300
HTML Layout Best Practices	304
Setting the Culture	305
Lesson Summary	311
Lesson Review	311
Lesson 2: Configuring Accessibility	312
Public Accessibility Guidelines	313
How ASP.NET Controls Support Accessibility	313
Improving Visual Accessibility	314
Improving the Accessibility of Forms That Require User Input	316
Testing Accessibility	318
Lesson Summary	324
Lesson Review	324

Case Scenarios	325
Case Scenario 1: Upgrading an Application for Multiple Languages	325
Case Scenario 2: Making a Web Application Accessible	326
Suggested Practices	326
Implement Globalization	326
Implement Accessibility	327
Take a Practice Test	327
Chapter 7 Creating Custom Web Controls	329
Before You Begin	330
Lesson 1: Creating User Controls	331
Creating User Controls	331
Defining User Control Events	333
Defining Properties in User Controls	337
Adding a User Control to a Page	339
Dynamically Loading User Controls	339
Creating a Templated User Control	340
Lesson Summary	353
Lesson Review	353
Lesson 2: Creating Custom Web Server Controls	355
Creating a Custom Web Server Control	356
Adding Toolbox Support for a Custom Web Server Control	364
Creating a Custom Designer for a Custom Web Server Control	370
Creating a Composite Control	372
Creating a Templated Custom Web Server Control	377
Registering Your Controls in Web.config	378
Lesson Summary	383
Lesson Review	383
Case Scenarios	384
Case Scenario 1: Sharing Controls Between Applications	385
Case Scenario 2: Providing Layout Flexibility	385

Suggested Practices	385
Create a New User Control	385
Create a New Custom Web Server Control	386
Create a New Composite Web Server Control	386
Create a New Templated Control	386
Take a Practice Test.	386
Chapter 8 Debugging and Deploying	387
Before You Begin.	388
Lesson 1: Debugging Websites.	389
Configuring ASP.NET for Debugging	389
Defining Custom Error Pages	392
Debugging Remotely	394
Debugging Client-Side Script	396
Lesson Summary	400
Lesson Review	401
Lesson 2: Troubleshooting Websites	402
Implementing Tracing	402
Monitoring a Running Web Application	412
Lesson Summary	416
Lesson Review	416
Lesson 3: Deploying Websites	418
Publishing Web Applications	419
Web Deployment Projects	425
Web Setup Projects	427
Deploying Web Applications by Using the Copy Web Tool	439
Precompiling and Publishing ASP.NET Websites	441
Installing ASP.NET 4 on IIS	442
Lesson Summary	446
Lesson Review	447
Case Scenarios.....	448
Case Scenario 1: Debugging	448
Case Scenario 2: Troubleshooting	448
Case Scenario 3: Deploying a Website	449

Suggested Practices	449
Debug a Website	449
Troubleshoot a Website	450
Publish a Web Application	450
Use a Web Setup Project	450
Use the Copy Web Tool	451
Precompile and Publish a Web Application	451
Take a Practice Test.	451
Chapter 9 Working with Client-Side Scripting, AJAX, and jQuery	453
Before You Begin.	454
Lesson 1: Creating AJAX-Enabled Web Forms.	455
Introducing ASP.NET AJAX	456
The AJAX Server Controls	457
Lesson Summary	469
Lesson Review	470
Lesson 2: Creating Client Scripts with the Microsoft AJAX Library	471
Creating Your Own Client Scripts	472
Creating Your Own Client Callbacks	480
Working with the Microsoft AJAX Library	483
Building Client Capabilities with AJAX	494
Lesson Summary	518
Lesson Review	518
Lesson 3: Implementing jQuery	520
Introducing the jQuery Library	521
Selecting and Traversing the DOM	524
Handling Client-Side Events	530
Adding Effects and Animations to a Page	533
Implementing AJAX with jQuery	534
Lesson Summary	545
Lesson Review	546

Case Scenarios.....	547
Case Scenario 1: Using the ASP.NET AJAX Extensions	548
Case Scenario 2: Using the Microsoft AJAX Library	548
Case Scenario 3: Using jQuery	549
Suggested Practices	549
Add Partial-Page Update Support to a Page	549
Create Client Code by Using the Microsoft AJAX Library	550
Write Interactive Client Code with jQuery	550
Take a Practice Test.....	550

Chapter 10 Writing and Working with HTTP Modules and Web Services **551**

Before You Begin.....	552
Lesson 1: Creating HTTP Handlers and HTTP Modules	552
Creating a Custom HTTP Handler	553
Asynchronous Handlers and Pages	558
Creating a Custom HTTP Module	566
Lesson Summary	573
Lesson Review	574
Lesson 2: Creating and Consuming XML Web Services	574
Creating an ASP.NET Web Service	576
Consuming an ASP.NET Web Service	580
Authentication and XML Web Services	586
Lesson Summary	591
Lesson Review	592
Lesson 3: Creating and Consuming WCF Services.....	593
Introducing WCF	594
Creating a WCF Service with ASP.NET	596
Consuming a WCF Service in an ASP.NET Page	600
Calling a WCF Service from Client Script by Using AJAX (REST and JSON)	603
Creating WCF Data Services	607
Lesson Summary	619
Lesson Review	619

Case Scenarios	620
Case Scenario 1: Working with HTTP Requests	620
Case Scenario 2: Selecting a Service Model	621
Suggested Practices	621
Work with XML HTTP Handlers and Modules	621
Work with XML Web Services	622
Work with WCF Services	622
Take a Practice Test	622
Chapter 11 Connecting to and Querying Data with LINQ	623
Before You Begin	624
Lesson 1: Getting Started with LINQ	625
Introducing LINQ	625
Querying Data with LINQ	628
Transforming Data with LINQ	637
Lesson Summary	647
Lesson Review	647
Lesson 2: LINQ and ADO.NET	649
LINQ to DataSet	649
LINQ to SQL	664
LINQ to Entities	672
Lesson Summary	680
Lesson Review	681
Case Scenarios	682
Case Scenario 1: Writing LINQ Queries	682
Case Scenario 2: Working with LINQ and ADO.NET	682
Suggested Practices	683
Write LINQ Queries	683
Work with LINQ and ADO.NET	683
Take a Practice Test	684

Chapter 12 Working with Data Source Controls and Data-Bound Controls	685
Before You Begin.....	686
Lesson 1: Connecting to Data with Data Source Controls.....	687
Understanding the Data Source Controls	687
Using Objects as Data Sources with ObjectDataSource	690
Connecting to Relational Databases by Using SqlDataSource	698
Working with Access Data Files and AccessDataSource Controls	702
Connecting to an Entity Model by Using EntityDataSource	703
Connecting to XML Data by Using XmlDataSource	707
Connecting to LINQ-Based Data by Using LinqDataSource	711
Connecting to Site Navigation Data by Using SiteMapDataSource	712
Lesson Summary	719
Lesson Review	720
Lesson 2: Working with Data-Bound Web Server Controls.....	721
Introducing Data-Bound Controls	721
Simple Data-Bound Controls	724
Composite Data-Bound Controls	728
Hierarchical Data-Bound Controls	741
Lesson Summary	753
Lesson Review	754
Lesson 3: Working with ASP.NET Dynamic Data	755
Getting Started with Dynamic Data Websites	756
Extending and Customizing Dynamic Data	763
Using Dynamic Controls in Existing Sites	777
Lesson Summary	781
Lesson Review	782
Case Scenarios.....	783
Case Scenario 1: Choosing Data Source Controls	783
Case Scenario 2: Implementing a Master-Detail Solution	783
Case Scenario 3: Adding ASP.NET Dynamic Data to a Website	784

Suggested Practices	784
Create Pages by Using Each of the Controls	784
Create a Master-Detail Solution by Using the Data-Bound Server Controls	784
Work with Dynamic Data Websites	785
Take a Practice Test.....	785
Chapter 13 Implementing User Profiles, Authentication, and Authorization	787
Before You Begin.....	788
Lesson 1: Working with User Profiles.....	788
User Profile Basics	789
Configuring a User Profile Provider	790
Defining the User Profile	792
Identifying Users	794
Setting and Saving a User Profile	796
Recognizing a Returning Visitor	797
Lesson Summary	802
Lesson Review	802
Lesson 2: Using ASP.NET Membership	804
Using the WSAT to Configure Security	804
Logon Controls	807
The FormsAuthentication Class	813
The Membership Class	815
The Roles Class	816
Configuring Websites to Require Windows Authentication	817
Restricting Access to ASP.NET Websites, Files, and Folders	818
Lesson Summary	824
Lesson Review	824
Case Scenarios.....	827
Case Scenario 1: Configuring Website Authorization	827
Case Scenario 2: Configuring Website Authentication	828

Suggested Practices	829
Configure Authentication and Authorization	829
Configure Profiles	830
Take a Practice Test.....	830
Chapter 14 Creating Websites with ASP.NET MVC 2	831
Before You Begin.....	832
Lesson 1: Understanding ASP.NET MVC Applications	832
The ASP.NET MVC Architecture	833
The Structure of an ASP.NET MVC Application	837
Running Your First ASP.NET MVC Webpage	839
Lesson Summary	845
Lesson Review	846
Lesson 2: Creating Models, Views, and Controllers	847
Defining a Model and Business Rules	848
Creating Controllers	851
Creating Views	856
Customizing MVC Routing	867
Lesson Summary	875
Lesson Review	876
Case Scenarios.....	878
Case Scenario: Creating an ASP.NET MVC Application	878
Suggested Practices	878
Work with Controllers, Views, and Routing	879
Take a Practice Test.....	879
Answers	881
Index	925
About the Authors	967

What do you think of this book? We want to hear from you!

Microsoft is interested in hearing your feedback so we can continually improve our books and learning resources for you. To participate in a brief online survey, please visit:

www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey/

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the hardworking people at Microsoft Press, in particular Rosemary Caperton, for getting us involved and for her guidance on this work.

Many thanks also to Kathy Krause and her team at OTSI (www.otsi.com) for keeping the book on schedule and providing excellent editing suggestions. She left no stone unturned and made us both seem like better writers than we are.

Thanks also go to our fantastic technical editor, Kenn Scribner. He added a lot to this book by challenging our coding examples, working through the labs, getting the CD right, and helping ensure consistency. It was truly great to have such a strong technical editor on the team.

Finally, we would like to thank our families and friends for their patience and understanding during the long nights and weekends that are the writing process.

Introduction

This training kit is designed for developers who plan to take Microsoft Certified Technical Specialist (MCTS) exam 70-515, as well as for developers who need to know how to develop applications by using the Microsoft .NET Framework 4 and Microsoft ASP.NET. We assume that before you begin using this kit, you have a working knowledge of Windows and Microsoft Visual Basic or Microsoft Visual C#. The topics in this training kit cover what you need to know for the exam as described on the Skills Measured tab for the exam, which is available at <http://www.microsoft.com/learning/en/us/exam.aspx?ID=70-515&locale=en-us#tab2>.

By using this training kit, you'll learn how to do the following:

- Create a web application by using web server controls, event handlers, application state, and session state.
- Create websites that take advantage of master pages, themes, and cascading style sheets.
- Use the wide variety of controls that ship with ASP.NET, including those for validation, navigation, user input, data binding, and much more.
- Create user controls and custom web server controls.
- Create a web application that stores user-specific information and preferences.
- Develop accessible web applications that can be used by a global audience.
- Write rich Internet applications (RIAs) by using client script, Asynchronous JavaScript and XML (AJAX), and jQuery.
- Connect your web applications with data by using Microsoft ADO.NET, Microsoft Language-Integrated Query (LINQ) queries, LINQ to SQL, the Entity Framework, and more.
- Write template-driven, data-bound websites by using Dynamic Data in ASP.NET.
- Monitor, troubleshoot, and debug ASP.NET applications.
- Build service-oriented applications (SOAs) by using Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) handlers and modules, web services, and Windows Communication Foundation (WCF).
- Add authentication and authorization features to your application to improve security and add multiple access levels.
- Build websites based on the ASP.NET MVC 2 framework.

Refer to the objective mapping page in the front of this book to see where in the book each exam objective is covered.

Hardware Requirements

We recommend that you use a computer that is not your primary workstation to do the practice exercises in this book, because you will make changes to the operating system and application configuration.

To use the companion CD, you need a computer running Windows XP with Service Pack 3 (SP3), Windows Vista with SP2, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003 with SP2, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Server 2008 with SP2, or Windows Server 2008 R2. The computer must meet the following minimum requirements:

- Personal computer with at least a 1-GHz 32-bit (x86) or 64-bit (x64) processor
- At least 1 GB of RAM (x86 systems) or 2 GB of RAM (x64 systems)
- At least a 40-GB hard disk
- DVD-ROM drive
- Super VGA (800 x 600) or higher resolution video adapter and monitor
- Keyboard and Microsoft mouse or compatible pointing device

Software Requirements

The computer used with the companion CD-ROM should also have the following software:

- A web browser such as Windows Internet Explorer
- An application that can display PDF files, such as Adobe Acrobat Reader, which can be downloaded at www.adobe.com/reader
- Microsoft Visual Studio 2010 Professional, a trial version of which can be downloaded at <http://www.microsoft.com/visualstudio/en-us/products/2010-editions/professional>

These requirements will support use of the companion CD-ROM.

Using the Companion Media

The companion media (CD) included with this training kit contains the following:

- **Practice tests** You can reinforce your understanding of programming with ASP.NET 4 by using electronic practice tests that you customize to meet your needs from the pool of lesson review questions in this book, or you can practice for the 70-515 certification exam by using tests created from a pool of 200 realistic exam questions, which give you many practice exams to ensure that you are prepared.
- **An eBook** An electronic version (eBook) of this book is included for when you do not want to carry the printed book with you.

NOTE **DIGITAL CONTENT FOR DIGITAL BOOK READERS**

If you bought a digital-only edition of this book, you can enjoy select content from the print edition's companion media. Go to <http://www.microsoftpressstore.com/title/9780735627406> to get your downloadable content. This content is always up to date and available to all readers.

How to Install the Practice Tests

To install the practice test software from the companion CD to your hard disk, perform the following steps:

1. Insert the companion CD into your CD drive and accept the license agreement. A CD menu appears.

NOTE **IF THE CD MENU DOES NOT APPEAR**

If the CD menu or the license agreement does not appear, AutoRun might be disabled on your computer. Refer to the Readme.txt file on the CD for alternate installation instructions.

2. Click Practice Tests and follow the instructions on the screen.

How to Use the Practice Tests

To start the practice test software, follow these steps:

1. Click Start, click All Programs, and then select Microsoft Press Training Kit Exam Prep. A window appears that shows all the Microsoft Press training kit exam prep suites installed on your computer.
2. Double-click the lesson review or practice test you want to use.

NOTE **LESSON REVIEWS VS. PRACTICE TESTS**

Select the (70-515) Web Applications Development with Microsoft .NET Framework 4 *lesson review* to use the questions from the "Lesson Review" sections of this book.

Select the (70-515) Web Applications Development with Microsoft .NET Framework 4 *practice test* to use a pool of 200 questions similar to those that appear on the 70-515 certification exam.

Lesson Review Options

When you start a lesson review, the Custom Mode dialog box appears so that you can configure your test. You can click OK to accept the defaults, or you can customize the number of questions you want, how the practice-test software works, the exam objectives to which you want the questions to relate, and whether you want your lesson review to be timed. If you are retaking a test, you can select whether you want to see all the questions again or only the questions you missed or did not answer.

After you click OK, your lesson review starts.

- **Article I** To take the test, answer the questions and use the Next and Previous buttons to move from question to question.
- **Article II** After you answer an individual question, if you want to see which answers are correct—along with an explanation of each correct answer—click Explanation.
- **Article III** If you prefer to wait until the end of the test to see how you did, answer all the questions, and then click Score Test. You will see a summary of the exam objectives you chose and the percentage of questions you got right, both overall and per objective. You can print a copy of your test, review your answers, or retake the test.

Practice Test Options

When you start a practice test, you choose whether to take the test in Certification Mode, Study Mode, or Custom Mode:

- **Certification Mode** Closely resembles the experience of taking a certification exam. The test has a set number of questions. It is timed, and you cannot pause and restart the timer.
- **Study Mode** Creates an untimed test during which you can review the correct answers and the explanations after you answer each question.
- **Custom Mode** Gives you full control over the test options so that you can customize them as you like. In all modes, the test user interface is basically the same but with different options enabled or disabled depending on the mode. The main options are discussed in the previous section, “Lesson Review Options.”

When you review your answer to an individual practice test question, you see a “References” section that lists where in the training kit you can find the information that relates to that question and provides links to other sources of information. After you click Test Results to score your entire practice test, you can click the Learning Plan tab to see a list of references for every objective.

How to Uninstall the Practice Tests

To uninstall the practice test software for a training kit, use the Uninstall A Program option in Windows Control Panel.

Microsoft Certified Professional Program

Microsoft certifications provide the best method for proving your command of current Microsoft products and technologies. The exams and corresponding certifications are developed to validate your mastery of critical competencies as you design and develop, or implement and support, solutions with Microsoft products and technologies. Computer professionals who become Microsoft-certified are recognized as experts and are sought after industry-wide. Certification brings a variety of benefits to the individual and to employers and organizations.

MORE INFO **ALL THE MICROSOFT CERTIFICATIONS**

For a full list of Microsoft certifications, go to www.microsoft.com/learning/mcp/default.asp.

Errata and Book Support

We've made every effort to ensure the accuracy of this book and its companion content. If you do find an error, please report it on our Microsoft Press site:

1. Go to www.microsoftpressstore.com.
2. In the Search box, enter the book's ISBN or title.
3. Select your book from the search results.
4. On your book's catalog page, find the Errata & Updates tab.
View/Submit Errata.

You'll find additional information and services for your book on its catalog page. If you need additional support, please email Microsoft Press Book Support at tkinput@microsoft.com.

Please note that product support for Microsoft software is not offered through the addresses above.

We Want to Hear from You

At Microsoft Press, your satisfaction is our top priority, and your feedback our most valuable asset. Please tell us what you think of this book at:

<http://www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey>

The survey is short, and we read every one of your comments and ideas. Thanks in advance for your input!

Stay in Touch

Let's keep the conversation going! We're on Twitter: <http://twitter.com/MicrosoftPress>

Preparing for the Exam

Microsoft certification exams are a great way to build your resume and let the world know about your level of expertise. Certification exams validate your on-the-job experience and product knowledge. Although there is no substitute for on-the-job experience, preparation through study and hands-on practice can help you prepare for the exam. We recommend that you augment your exam preparation plan by using a combination of available study materials and courses. For example, you might use the Training Kit and another study guide for your "at home" preparation, and take a Microsoft Official Curriculum course for the classroom experience. Choose the combination that you think works best for you.

Debugging and Deploying

A large part of the development process involves removing bugs and resolving other issues in your application. Microsoft Visual Studio and Microsoft ASP.NET provide several tools to support these tasks. These tools allow you to set breakpoints in code, step through your code by using the Integrated Development Environment (IDE), view variable values in watch windows and DataTips, execute code in the command window, and more. These debugging tools work for all the applications you create with Visual Studio, not just websites. Websites do, however, present their own set of challenges. A website runs in a distributed environment in which the network, database, and client are all running on separate processes. This can make it difficult just to get debugging set up and to get the right troubleshooting information from your application and its environment.

After you've developed and tested your application, it's time to deploy it to a production environment. In most real-world scenarios, deployment involves moving an application from a staged area, where users have reviewed and tested its functionality, to one or more production servers. The deployment process can be automated with tools and scripts, managed and governed by IT departments, or deployed directly by developers through Visual Studio. The method you will use to build, verify, and deploy your application really depends on your scenarios, the type of application, and the environment.

This chapter explores how you debug, monitor, troubleshoot, and deploy websites. The first lesson covers setting up debugging, creating custom error pages, debugging on a remote server, and debugging client script. The second lesson is about troubleshooting and monitoring a running ASP.NET site. The third lesson explores those tools and features of Visual Studio that make deploying websites easier.

Exam objectives in this chapter:

- Configuring and Extending a Web Application
 - Debug a Web application.
 - Deploy a Web application.

Lessons in this chapter:

- Lesson 1: Debugging Websites **389**
- Lesson 2: Troubleshooting Websites **402**
- Lesson 3: Deploying Websites **418**

Before You Begin

To complete the lessons in this chapter, you should be familiar with developing applications with Visual Studio by using Microsoft Visual Basic or Microsoft Visual C#. In addition, you should be comfortable with all of the following:

- The Visual Studio 2010 IDE
- Debugging Windows applications
- Using Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) and client-side scripting
- Creating ASP.NET websites and forms



REAL WORLD

Tony Northrup

If you're like me and you hate debugging, give this chapter extra attention. After you learn how to use the ASP.NET and Visual Studio 2010 debugging tools, you'll be able to diagnose and fix bugs faster than ever.

I prefer to debug an ASP.NET website the same way I debug a traditional Windows application. I run the website on my local computer, and I make use of breakpoints, watch lists, and DataTips to examine the inner workings of the website. Those technologies are all discussed in the first lesson. I only resort to tracing, as discussed in the second lesson, when a website is running on a remote server and I can't set up a remote debugger.

For more complex problems, I make use of troubleshooting tools that I don't describe in this book. Microsoft Network Monitor (or any sniffer) allows you to see the communications sent between browsers and web servers. For troubleshooting communications between the web server and the database, I use the Microsoft SQL Server Profiler. For troubleshooting performance issues, I use Page Speed (available at <http://code.google.com/speed/page-speed/>) when I can reproduce the problem locally, and WebPagetest (available at <http://webpagetest.org>) when I need to analyze requests sent across the Internet.

Lesson 1: Debugging Websites

Debugging websites is more complex than debugging Windows applications because web requests are very short-lived, the client and server are typically running on different computers, and client browsers have widely varying capabilities. In addition, the state that the application uses is also distributed among database, web server, cache, session, cookie, and so on. Fortunately, Visual Studio and ASP.NET have several tools that allow you to get debugging information from your site during development.

This lesson covers the setup and configuration of the ASP.NET debugging features. Coverage includes remote debugging and client-side script debugging.

NOTE SCOPE OF CHAPTER CONTENT

This lesson covers the configuration and setup of debugging with ASP.NET and Visual Studio. It does not cover the basics of using the Visual Studio debugger, such as how to set breakpoints and how to view variables in watch windows. Rather, it focuses on managing the debugging of an ASP.NET website.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Configure a website for debugging with Visual Studio.
- Set up remote debugging between a development machine and a server.
- Redirect users to a default error page or custom error pages based on Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) status codes.
- Debug client-side script.

Estimated lesson time: 30 minutes

Configuring ASP.NET for Debugging

You can debug an ASP.NET application by using the standard features of the Visual Studio debugger, such as breakpoints, watch windows, code step-through, and error information. To do so, you must first configure ASP.NET for debugging. There are two areas where you set this information: the project's property page and the Web.config file.

Activating the ASP.NET Debugger

The first step is to configure the ASP.NET debugger settings in your project's Property Pages dialog box, including those that determine whether or not to allow Visual Studio to run the debugger. When installed, Visual Studio enables ASP.NET debugging and establishes default debugger settings. However, if you need to set or modify this setting, you can do so by following these steps:

1. Right-click the website in Solution Explorer and then click Property Pages. This will open the Property Pages dialog box for the website, as shown in Figure 8-1.
2. Select Start Options from the left side of the dialog box.
3. In the Debuggers section, at the bottom of the dialog box, select (or clear) the ASP.NET check box to enable (or disable) the ASP.NET debugger for Visual Studio.

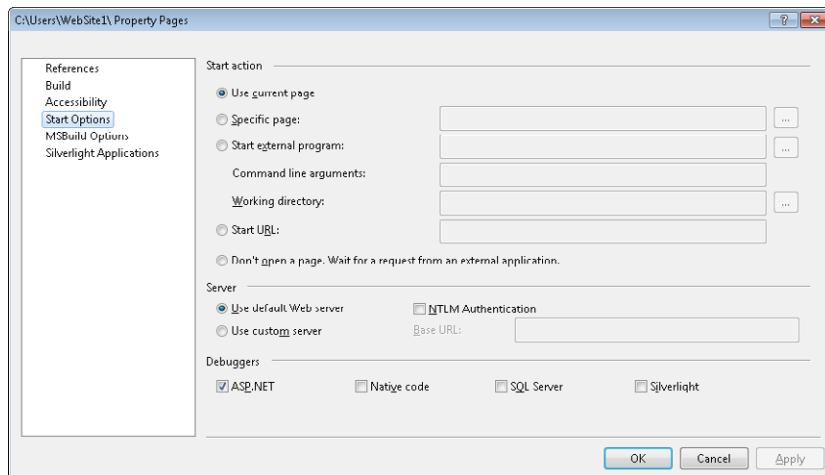


FIGURE 8-1 The project Property Pages dialog box for an ASP.NET website.

Configuring Debugging

Assuming that you allow Visual Studio to run the ASP.NET debugger, the second step is to enable debugging either for your entire site or on a page-by-page basis. Even though ASP.NET debugging in general might be enabled from a Visual Studio perspective, individual sites can disable debugging for security reasons. By default, websites that Visual Studio creates individually disable the debugger for just this reason. Enabling debugging for your site will add debug symbols into the compiled code. Visual Studio uses these symbols to provide debugging support. However, this can slow the performance of your website. In addition, turning on debugging will transmit error information to the web browser when you run the page outside of Visual Studio. This can present a security risk, because error information provides potential attackers with a lot of information about how your site works. For these reasons, you should only turn debugging on during development.

You enable debugging for your entire site by editing a setting in the Web.config file. In Web.config, you set the debug attribute of the compilation element to true. If you use Visual Studio to start debugging, Visual Studio will prompt you to automatically enable this setting. The following markup shows an example that includes the nesting level of the compilation element.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <compilation debug="true" targetFramework="4.0"/>
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

You might not always want to turn on debugging for your entire site. In these cases, you can switch debugging on and off at the individual page level. This will ensure that only the designated pages will be compiled with the debug symbols. The rest of the site will be compiled without debugging. To enable page-level debugging, set the Debug attribute of the @ Page directive (found at the top of the markup for an ASPX page). The following shows an example.

```
<%@ Page Debug="true" ... %>
```

After you have debugging enabled, you can use the many features of the Visual Studio debugger. When you run your application, Visual Studio automatically attaches to the running ASP.NET web server process (unless you are developing remotely, which is discussed later in this lesson). You can then set breakpoints in your code, step through line by line, and view variable values in the watch window. In addition, if debugging is enabled, you can get error information sent to the browser window even when you are not running your application through Visual Studio.

New Debugging Features in Visual Studio 2010

This book assumes that you have some familiarity with the Visual Studio development environment and does not explain the details of setting breakpoints and monitoring values. It is assumed that you know that you can set a breakpoint to pause a running webpage at a specific line and then examine the values of different variables.

In Visual Studio 2010, you can export and import a set of breakpoints by using the Debug window. First, display the window by clicking the Debug menu, selecting Windows, and then selecting Breakpoints. On the Breakpoints toolbar, click the Export button to save the current set of breakpoints to a file. Later, use the Import button to read them back in. This allows you to quickly set up debugging for a recurring problem.

While debugging, you can point to a variable to view its current value in a DataTip. With Visual Studio 2010, you can click the pushpin icon on the DataTip, as shown in Figure 8-2. The value will then always appear in the debugger, and you can add comments that you can view later. After you stop debugging, Visual Studio displays a pushpin icon in the left margin. Point to the pushpin to view the DataTip's value from the last debugging session. You can import and export pinned DataTips by using the Debug menu.

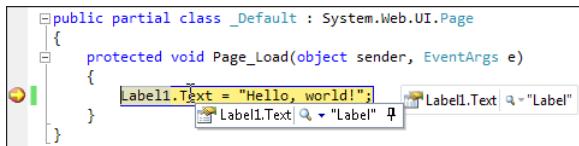


FIGURE 8-2 Pinning a value in Visual Studio 2010.

There are many other useful debugging improvements. For detailed information, see “VS 2010 Debugger Improvements” at <http://weblogs.asp.net/scottgu/archive/2010/04/21/vs-2010-debugger-improvements-breakpoints-datatips-import-export.aspx>.

Defining Custom Error Pages

In your production environment, it is likely that you do not want to show users the default ASP.NET error page if your site breaks. This holds true for the default Internet Information Services (IIS) error pages as well. Rather, you most likely want users to see a page that tells them how to contact support to resolve the problem. You can also configure your site to display a generic error page if users encounter an unhandled error. You can set this page at the site level. You can also set individual pages for specific error types.

Configuring a Custom Site-Level Error Page

You configure custom errors inside the Web.config file by using the `<customErrors>` element nested inside `<system.web>`. This element has the mode and defaultRedirect attributes. The mode attribute can be set to on to turn custom errors on, off to turn them off, or RemoteOnly to turn custom errors on for remote clients only. With RemoteOnly, if the user (typically an administrator) is on the server, he or she will not get the custom error, but instead will get the real error message.

The defaultRedirect attribute is used to indicate the path to a default error page. This page will be displayed when an unhandled exception occurs on the site. The only time this will not happen is when a specific custom error page is added to the `<error>` child elements of `<customErrors>` (as discussed in the next section). The following example shows markup for a custom error definition inside Web.config.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <customErrors defaultRedirect="SiteErrorPage.aspx" mode="RemoteOnly">
    </customErrors>
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

Notice that in this markup, the page is set to an ASPX page. You can set this to an HTML page, an ASPX page, or another resource to which the web server can redirect.

On redirection, the server passes the path of the page that caused the error. This path is provided as part of the query string by using the named parameter `aspxErrorPath`; you can use this information to track errors on your site. For example, the following shows the browser's URL when the `SiteErrorPage.aspx` page is displayed based on an error thrown on `Default.aspx`:

Configuring Error-Specific Error Pages

It is also possible to define specific pages for various HTTP status codes. This allows you to provide more specific information to users when a configured status code is returned. For example, if users do not have access to a requested page or resource, their request results in an HTTP 403 return code. This status code indicates that they are denied access to the resource. You can then write a custom page that explains the process for requesting access to the page. Use the `<error>` element to redirect to that custom page. The following markup shows an example.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <customErrors defaultRedirect="SiteErrorPage.aspx" mode="RemoteOnly">
      <error statusCode="403" redirect="RestrictedAccess.aspx" />
    </customErrors>
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

There are many HTTP status codes. Errors fall in the range from 400 to 600. Codes with numbers 400 to 499 are reserved for request errors and codes 500 to 599 are set aside for server errors. Table 8-1 lists some common HTTP status codes for errors. For a complete list, see <http://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec10.html#sec10>.

TABLE 8-1 Common HTTP Status Codes

CODE	DESCRIPTION
400	The request is not understood (unintelligible).
403	The user does not have access to the requested resource.
404	The file is not found at the requested URL.
405	The request method is not supported.
406	The requested Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) type is not accepted.
408	The request has timed out.
500	An internal server error has occurred.
503	The capacity of the server has been reached.

MORE INFO IIS 7 HTTP STATUS CODES

The HTTP status codes in IIS 7 have been extended to provide some additional information—they now include decimal point values. For example, the 403 code indicating that access is forbidden includes 403.1 to 403.19, to provide details on why access was forbidden. For more information, see “The HTTP status codes in IIS 7.0” (which also applies to IIS 7.5) in the MSDN Knowledge Base at <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/943891>.

Debugging Remotely

In most scenarios, you debug a website by running it locally on your development machine. This puts the client browser, the development environment (Visual Studio), and the web server on a single machine. In this case, Visual Studio automatically connects to the running site’s process and allows you to debug your website. However, there might be occasions when you need to debug an issue against a remote server—when an error appears after a website has been deployed to the production environment, for example. In these scenarios, you will need to enable remote debugging.

Some of the details of enabling remote debugging are specific to the environment. There are slight modifications to the process depending on your domain, credentials, and the operating systems in use by the developer and the server. However, the process of enabling remote debugging is made easier with the Visual Studio Remote Debugging Monitor (msvsmon.exe). You run this tool on the server you intend to debug. The tool can be found inside your 32-bit development environment installation folder (for example, Program Files\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\Common7\IDE\Remote Debugger\). If you have installed a 64-bit version of Visual Studio, it will be installed within the Program Files (x86) folder. You can copy the file to a file share or over to the server. You can also install the tool from the Visual Studio DVD set.

When you run the tool, it first determines whether Windows Firewall is configured to allow remote debugging, and prompts you to open the remote debugging port if necessary. You can find a detailed walkthrough of manual configuration of the firewall in the MSDN documentation (see “How to: Manually Configure the Windows Vista Firewall for Remote Debugging,” at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/bb385831.aspx>). When it is running, the remote debugger (as shown in Figure 8-3) displays debugging events.

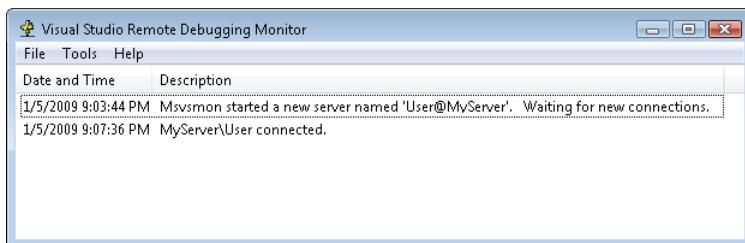


FIGURE 8-3 The Remote Debugging Monitor user interface.

You can use the Remote Debugging Monitor tool to set remote debugging security options on the server. To do so, from the Tools menu, select Options. This opens the Options dialog box, as shown in Figure 8-4. Here you set the server name to a user and a server. Each instance of the remote debugger running on a server has a unique server name. You typically run an instance of the remote debugger for each developer who is doing remote debugging on the server. The Options dialog box also allows you to set the user authentication mode and permissions. Typically this is set to Windows Authentication. You then give the appropriate user in the Active Directory repository access rights to remotely debug.

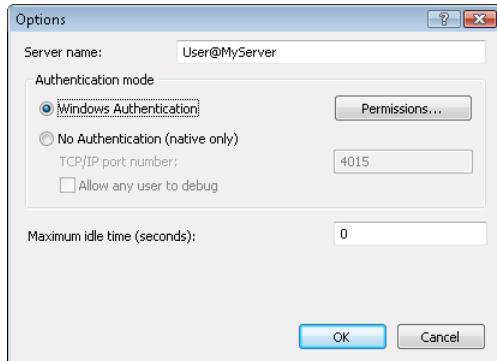


FIGURE 8-4 The Options dialog box for the Remote Debugging Monitor.

You begin a remote debugging session by opening Visual Studio and a solution that includes the code you intend to debug. You can then attach to the server that is running the Remote Debugging Monitor application by selecting Attach To Process from the Debug menu. This opens the Attach To Process dialog box shown in Figure 8-5.

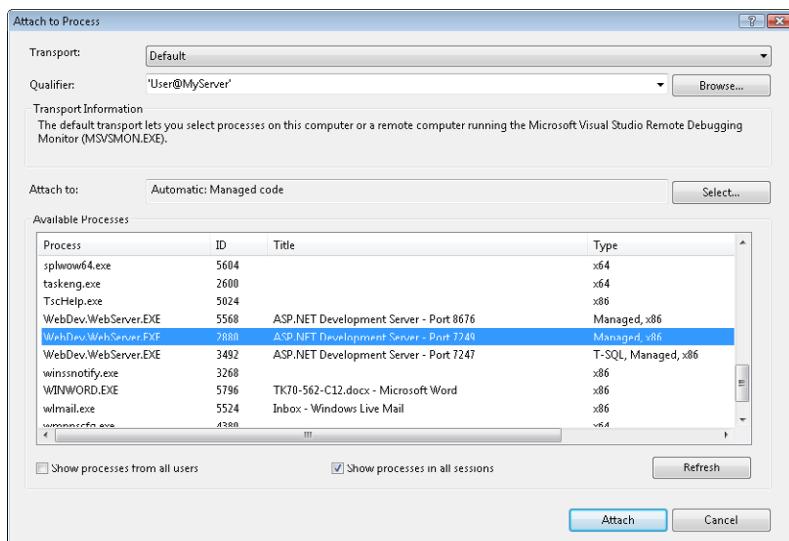


FIGURE 8-5 The Attach To Process dialog box in Visual Studio.

In this dialog box, you set the qualifier to the name of the server running the Remote Debugging Monitor. Recall that this is the server name you set in the Options dialog box for the Remote Debugging Monitor and typically is defined as *User@Server*. You will then see a list of running processes on the server. Select the ASP.NET web server process, and click Attach to start remote debugging. You can then access the server through a browser to cause a breakpoint to fire or an error to occur. Doing so will send you into debug mode in Visual Studio.



EXAM TIP

For the exam, and for real life, know how to configure ASP.NET debugging for a remote Web server running IIS. Be sure you understand the permissions you need and how to attach to a remote process.

For information on debugging an ASP.NET application running on a Server Core installation of Windows Server 2008 R2, see “How to Get Started with ASP.NET Applications on Server Core” at <http://code.msdn.microsoft.com/R2CoreASPNET>.

Debugging Client-Side Script

Visual Studio also allows you to debug client script running in a browser. This is useful if you write a lot of JavaScript and need to walk through the code line by line and use the other features of the debugging toolset.

To get started, you need to enable script debugging support in the browser. To do so, open Windows Internet Explorer and select Tools | Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab of the Internet Options dialog box, as shown in Figure 8-6. Find the Browsing node in the Settings tree and clear the Disable Script Debugging (Internet Explorer) check box.

You can then begin debugging client script. You can get started by setting a breakpoint in your client script and running the site through Visual Studio. You can also manually attach to code running in a browser. You do this by first opening the source code in Visual Studio and then using the Attach To Process dialog box discussed in the previous section to attach to the browser’s process. Any error will give you the option to debug.

NOTE DEBUGGING AJAX

For more information on debugging client script that uses the Microsoft Asynchronous JavaScript and XML (AJAX) Library, see “Tracing AJAX Applications” in Lesson 2 of this chapter.

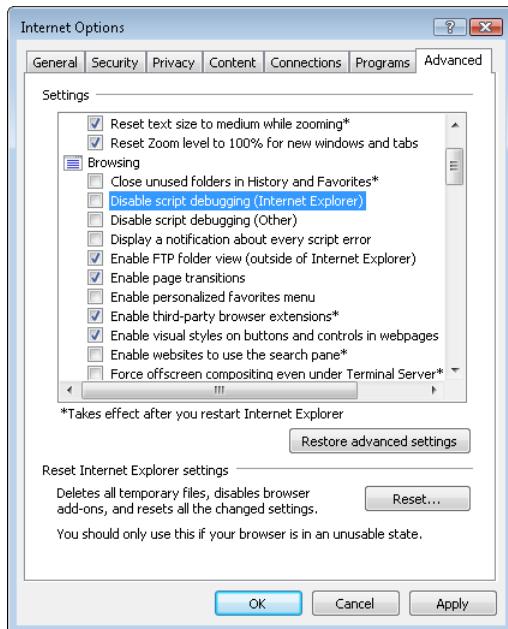


FIGURE 8-6 Using the Internet Options dialog box to enable script debugging for Internet Explorer.



Quick Check

1. In which dialog box do you enable the ASP.NET debugger for a project?
2. What is the name of the element in the Web.config file that you use to define the debug attribute to turn on debugging for your site?

Quick Check Answers

1. You can enable the ASP.NET debugger from your project's Property Pages dialog box.
2. You can turn on debugging by using the debug attribute of the compilation element.

PRACTICE Configuring Debugging in ASP.NET

In this practice, you configure a website to support debugging and custom error pages. You also set up Internet Explorer to support script debugging.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE 1 Configuring a Website for Debugging

In this exercise, you create a website and configure it for debugging.

1. Open Visual Studio. Create a new, file-based website.
2. Open the Web.config file and navigate to the compilation node. Change the default <compilation debug /> setting from false to true.
3. Create a new web form named **Default2.aspx** without a master page. Inside the Page.Load event handler (which you will need to add if you are using Visual Basic), throw an exception. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object, _  
    ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Load  
  
    Throw New ApplicationException("Example exception.")  
  
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)  
{  
    throw new ApplicationException("Example exception.");  
}
```

4. Run the Default2.aspx page in a browser by right-clicking the page in Solution Explorer and choosing View In Browser. This displays the debugging error information, as shown in the example in Figure 8-7.

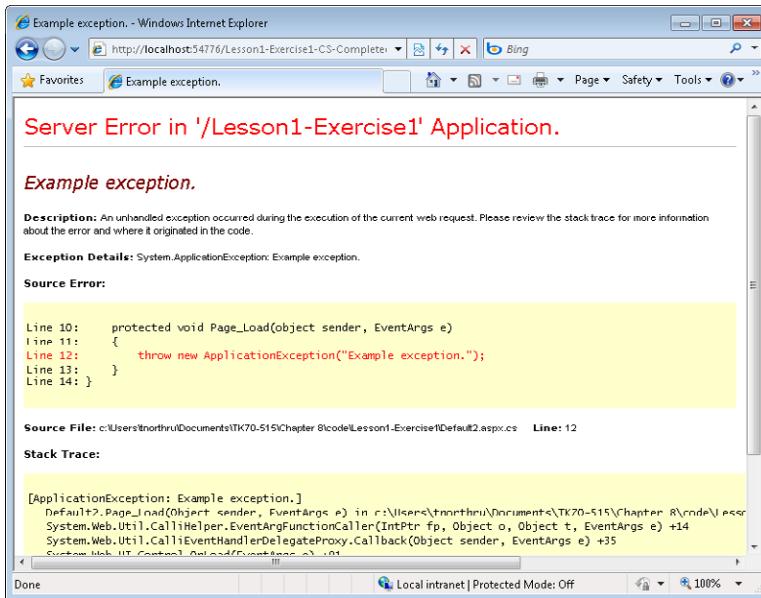


FIGURE 8-7 The ASP.NET debugging error information in a web browser.

EXERCISE 2 Adding a Custom Error Page

In this exercise, you create a custom error page and configure your site to redirect to it for a specific HTTP status code.

1. Open the project you created in the previous exercise. Alternatively, you can open the completed Lesson 1, Exercise 1 project in the samples installed from the CD.
2. Add a new web form to the site. Name this form **ResourceNotFound.aspx**. Add text to the body of this page to display a custom error message to users when they try to access a resource that is not on the web server. You can use the aspxerrorpath query string parameter to display the path of the requested resource in the message.
3. Open the Web.config file again. Add the customErrors section and turn on custom errors. Add an error element for HTTP status code 404 (resource not found). The following markup shows an example.

```
<customErrors mode="On">
    <error statusCode="404" redirect="ResourceNotFound.aspx" />
</customErrors>
```

4. View Default2.aspx in a browser again. Notice that the debugging error message is no longer shown. This is because the `on` setting in the `customErrors` node indicates that the site should only display custom errors. Next, change the URL in your browser to request fakepage.aspx (which should not exist in your site). This will redirect the browser to the ResourceNotFound.aspx page.

EXERCISE 3 Enabling Script Debugging

In this exercise, you enable client script debugging for a website.

1. Open the project you created in the previous exercise. Alternatively, you can open the completed Lesson 1, Exercise 2 project in the samples installed from the CD.
2. Add a new web form to your site. Name the page **ScriptDebug.aspx**.
3. Add a JavaScript function to the markup. This can be a simple script, as follows.

```
<script language="javascript" type="text/jscript">
    function buttonClick() {
        alert('Button clicked.');
    }
</script>
```

4. Add an HTML button to the page. Set the `OnClick` event to call the JavaScript function, as follows.

```
<input id="Button1" type="button" value="button" onclick="buttonClick()" />
```

5. Open Internet Explorer and select Tools | Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab and clear the Disable Script Debugging (Internet Explorer) check box. If Internet Explorer is not currently your default browser, configure it as the default to allow client script debugging from Visual Studio. To make it the default browser, click the Make Default button on the Programs tab. Click OK.
6. Return to Visual Studio. Set a breakpoint on the `buttonClick` function in the markup. You can do so by clicking the margin area in the code editor (on the left side).
7. Run the application from Visual Studio by choosing Start Debugging from the Debug menu (or by simply pressing F5). Navigate to the `ScriptDebug.aspx` page. Click the button to break into the script debugger.

Lesson Summary

- You turn on debugging for your website in the `Web.config` file by setting the `debug` attribute of the `compilation` element to `true`. You can also turn on debugging at the individual page level by using the `Debug` attribute of the `@ Page` directive.
- You can set a custom error page for your entire site by setting the `defaultRedirect` attribute of the `customErrors` element. You can also map specific pages to HTTP status codes by using the `errors` child element.

- The Remote Debugging Monitor (msvsmon.exe) allows you to configure debugging on a remote server. After it is configured, you need to attach to your site's ASP.NET process from Visual Studio.
- You can set an option in Internet Explorer to allow you to debug client script from Visual Studio. This allows you to use the debugging features of Visual Studio with client-side JavaScript.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 1, "Debugging Websites." The questions are also available on the companion CD as a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You are debugging an application on a test server. You have an issue on a particular page and need to get the error details. You do not want to turn on debugging for the entire site. What actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. In the Web.config file, set the debug attribute of the compilation element to true.
 - B. In the Web.config file, set the debug attribute of the compilation element to false.
 - C. On the page that throws the error, set the debug attribute of the @ Page directive to true.
 - D. On the page that throws the error, set the debug attribute of the @ Page directive to false.
2. You are deploying your application to a production environment. You want to redirect users to a default error page if they encounter any unhandled exceptions or HTTP errors within the site. You also want to indicate the user's requested resource on the error page to help with support calls. What actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. Set the redirect attribute of the error element to an error page within your site.
 - B. Set the defaultRedirect attribute of the customErrors element to an error page within your site.
 - C. Use the statusCode query string parameter to retrieve the requested resource to display on the error page.
 - D. Use the aspxerrorpath query string parameter to retrieve the requested resource to display on the error page.

3. You are investigating an error that only occurs when the application is deployed to the development or test server. You need to debug this error remotely. What actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
- A. Run the Remote Debugging Monitor (Msvsmon.exe) on the development computer that is doing the debugging. Use the tool to define connection rights to the server you want to debug.
 - B. Run the Remote Debugging Monitor (Msvsmon.exe) on the server you want to debug. Use the tool to define connection rights for the developer doing the debugging.
 - C. In Visual Studio, use the Attach To Process dialog box to attach to the ASP.NET process on the server you want to debug.
 - D. In Visual Studio, use the Attach To Process dialog box to attach to the browser process that is running the application you want to debug.

Lesson 2: Troubleshooting Websites

Not all issues can be found by using Visual Studio. Therefore, ASP.NET provides tools with which you can trace and monitor your code as it executes in a test or production environment. These facilities of ASP.NET can be used to troubleshoot and diagnose problems that might otherwise prove impossible to recreate. In addition, these features allow you to examine statistics and usage on your website.

This lesson first covers enabling and configuring tracing in ASP.NET. It then explores how you can monitor a running website.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Enable and configure ASP.NET tracing.
- Understand the data that is available through ASP.NET tracing.
- Work with monitoring tools to evaluate a running ASP.NET site.

Estimated lesson time: 20 minutes

Implementing Tracing

Tracing is the process of emitting data about a running application. In ASP.NET, this data is logged to a trace log file that you can access through a web browser. The data provides important information about your site, such as who accessed the site, what the results were, what the HTTP data looked like, and much more. You can also inject your own tracing calls into your code. This data will be emitted alongside the ASP.NET data.

You enable tracing through the Web.config file. You can edit this file manually, or you can use the ASP.NET Web Site Administration Tool (WSAT) to provide an administrator-friendly interface to enable and configure tracing.

Enabling Tracing by Using the WSAT

The following steps show how to enable and configure the trace facility by using the WSAT:

1. Open the WSAT by selecting Website | ASP.NET Configuration from the Visual Studio menu.
2. On the home page, click the Application tab of the WSAT. This will bring up settings for your application.
3. On the Application tab, click Configure Debugging And Tracing (in the lower-right corner). This will display the configuration options for debugging and tracing, as shown in Figure 8-8.

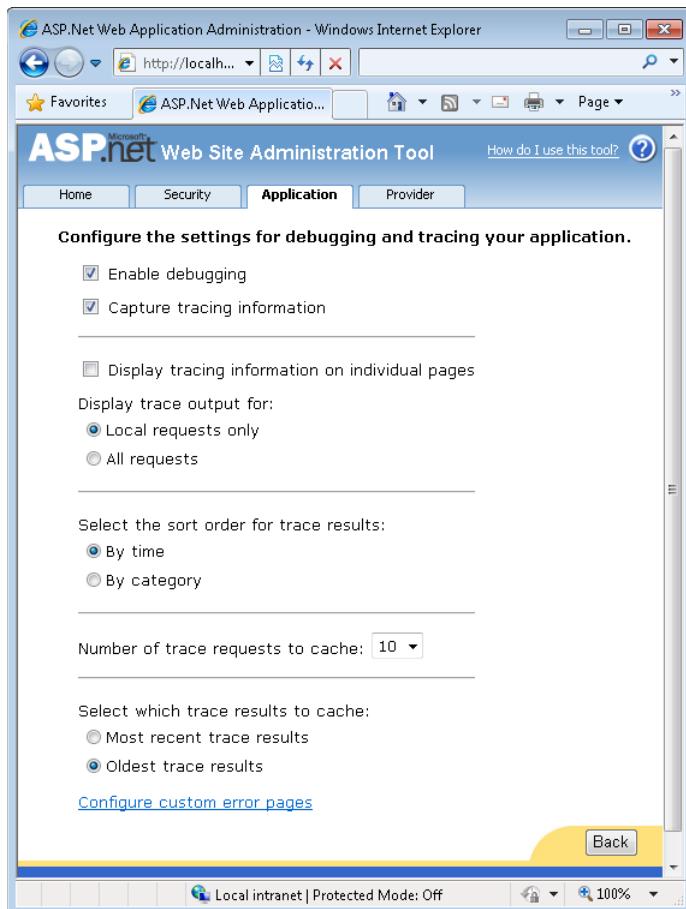


FIGURE 8-8 The debugging and tracing options in the WSAT.

4. Select the Capture Tracing Information check box. This enables the tracing features to be changed as necessary.

As you can see from Figure 8-8, there are many options you can configure with respect to tracing. These options also map to Web.config settings (because that is what the WSAT administers). Table 8-2 describes each of the options, from the perspective of both the WSAT and Web.config.

TABLE 8-2 ASP.NET Trace Settings

WSAT SETTING	WEB.CONFIG SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Capture Tracing Information	enabled	Enables tracing for your application. When this is set to true, the other trace options are also made available.
Display Tracing Information On Individual Pages	pageOutput	Displays the trace information directly on the webpage that is being traced. Depending on the page content, the trace information displays either at the bottom of the webpage or behind the regular webpage content.
Display Trace Output For	localOnly	Designates whether you intend to display tracing just for local requests or for all requests. When set to Local Requests Only, the trace facility operates only with requests from the computer on which the web server is running. The All Requests setting enables tracing for all requests from any computer to the website.
Select The Sort Order For Trace Results	traceMode	Enables sorting of the trace output either by time or by category.
Number Of Trace Requests To Cache	requestLimit	Sets the number of records to hold in the cache (or trace log).
Select Which Trace Results To Cache	mostRecent	Designates whether to store the most recent trace result or the oldest trace results. When set to Most Recent Trace Results, the cache continues to update, holding only the latest results. When set to Oldest Trace Results, as soon as the number of requests has been met, the cache no longer updates until after the website is restarted or the log is cleared.

Enabling Tracing by Using the Web.config File

You can enable tracing manually by editing the Web.config file of an ASP.NET site. You do so by editing attributes (as listed in Table 8-2 in the previous section) of the <trace> element. This element is nested under <configuration><system.web>. The following markup shows an example.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <trace enabled="true"
      requestLimit="100"
      pageOutput="false"
      traceMode="SortByTime"
      localOnly="false"
      mostRecent="true" />
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

In the preceding markup, tracing is enabled (enabled="true") for all requests to the server (localOnly="false"). The trace log will cache the most recent 100 requests (requestLimit="100" and mostRecent="true"). The trace log will be sorted by time (traceMode="SortByTime"). The data will only be viewable through the trace log and not on each individual page (pageOutput="false").

Enabling Tracing at the Page Level

You can also enable tracing for specific pages only. This is useful if you do not want to turn on tracing at the site level, but instead enable it only on a page that you are troubleshooting. You enable tracing at the page level by setting the trace attribute of the @ Page directive to true. This attribute is found at the top of the page's markup. The following shows an example.

```
<%@Page trace="true" ... />
```

Viewing Trace Data

After ASP.NET trace data has been configured and turned on, you can view the data on each webpage (Trace="true") or view the trace output by navigating to the Trace.axd page on the current website (<http://server/application/trace.axd>). When viewed on the same page, the trace information is appended to the bottom of the page (for pages that use flow layout). Figure 8-9 shows an example.

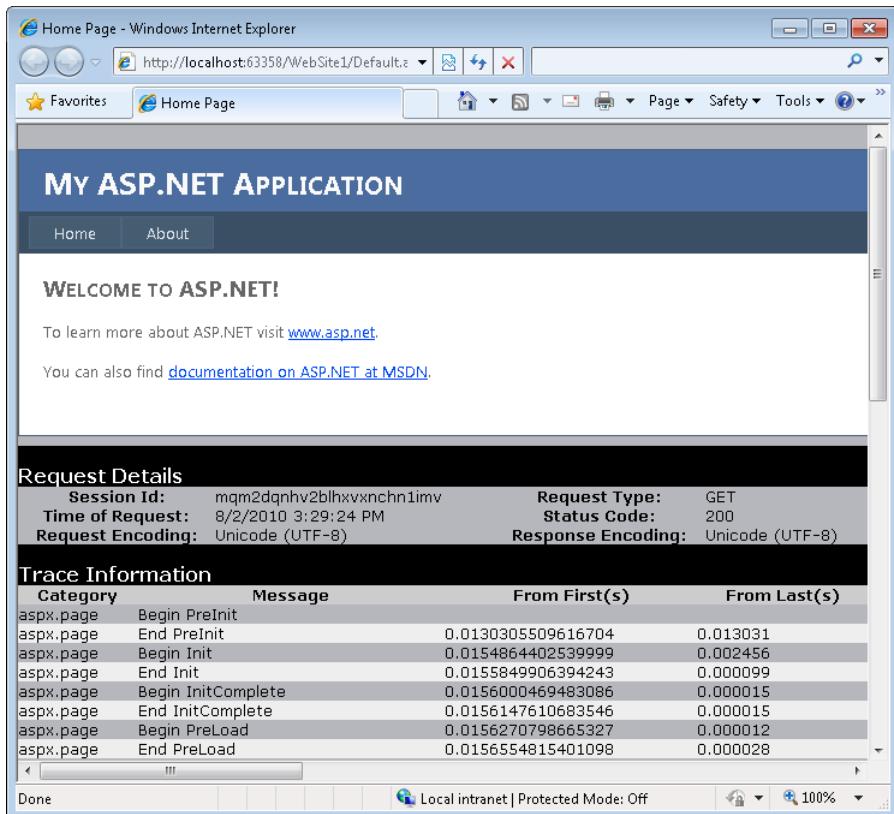


FIGURE 8-9 Trace information displayed on an ASP.NET page.

To view your entire log, you navigate to the Trace.axd page for your site. This page will show a log event if pageOutput is set to true. The first page of the log is a summary page. This page contains a list of trace results that are in the cache. Figure 8-10 shows an example.

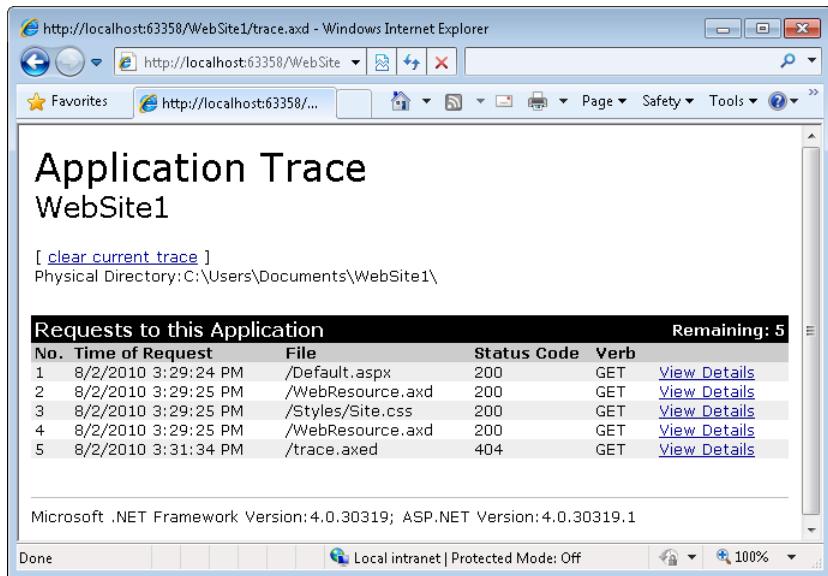


FIGURE 8-10 The Trace.axd page.

You can click one of the cached results to view the details of the trace record for a single page request. These details are similar to the information that is shown on each webpage (as shown previously, in Figure 8-9).

SECURITY ALERT

If you opt to display the trace information on individual pages, the trace information can be displayed on any browser that makes a request. This is a potential security threat, because sensitive information such as server variables will be displayed. Be sure to disable page tracing on production web servers.

The trace result page is separated into sections, as described in Table 8-3. The information in these sections can be very useful when you are trying to identify performance issues and resource usage.

TABLE 8-3 Trace Result Sections

TRACE RESULT SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Request Details	Provides general details about the page request.
Trace Information	Displays performance information related to the webpage's life-cycle events. The From First(s) column displays the running time from when the page request started. The From Last(s) column shows the time elapsed since the previous event.
Control Tree	Displays information about each control on the webpage, such as the size of the rendered controls.
Session State	Displays all session variables and their values.
Application State	Displays all application variables and their states.
Request Cookies Collection	Displays the list of cookies that are passed to the server as part of the request.
Response Cookies Collection	Displays the list of cookies that are passed to the browser as part of the response.
Headers Collection	Displays the list of HTTP headers that are sent to the web server as part of the request.
Form Collection	Displays the list of values that are posted back to the web server.
QueryString Collection	Displays the list of values that are included in the query string.
Server Variables	Displays all server variables.

Emitting Custom Trace Data

You can use the `Trace` class in the `System.Diagnostics` namespace to add your own trace messages to the data that is displayed by ASP.NET tracing. This class is exposed as a member of the `Page` object. This allows you to call `Page.Trace` (or just `Trace`). You use the `Write` method of this object to write a message to the trace log. When doing so, you can provide a category and the message.

The following shows an example of writing to the trace log. Here a message is added to the log when the page is loaded and when a user clicks the button on the page. The category of the message is set to `Custom Category`. This category allows you to find your message easily. Custom messages are embedded in the `Trace Information` section of the trace details.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object, _
    ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Load

    Trace.WriteLine("Custom Category", "Page_Load called")

End Sub

Protected Sub Button1_Click(ByVal sender As Object, _
    ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Button1.Click

    Trace.WriteLine("Custom Category", "Button1_Click called")

End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    Trace.WriteLine("Custom Category", "Page_Load called");
}

protected void Button1_Click(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    Trace.WriteLine("Custom Category", "Button1_Click called");
}
```

Tracing AJAX Applications

Debugging an AJAX application presents its own issues. You do not have a server process on which to rely. Instead, you have to try to debug the code as it executes in the browser. In the previous section, you saw how to do this. However, AJAX-enabled applications tend to have a lot of client code, so they might present more issues when they are being debugged. For this reason, the Microsoft AJAX Library provides the `Sys.Debug` client-side namespace.

The tracing you enable on the server is not fired for AJAX partial-page requests. Therefore, you will see nothing in the `Trace.axd` log for these types of requests. Instead, you must use the features of `Sys.Debug` to write out trace messages. The `Debug` class includes the `assert`, `trace`, `clearTrace`, `traceDump`, and `fail` methods. These methods can be used to display and manage messages to a trace log based on your needs.

As an example, suppose you write out a message by using `Sys.Debug.trace`. Of course, your page must include the Microsoft AJAX Library JavaScript file. You make this happen by adding a `ScriptManager` control to your page. (See Chapter 9, “Working with Client-Side Scripting, AJAX, and jQuery,” for more details on working with AJAX.) The following markup shows part of an `ASPx` page that includes a `ScriptManager` control and a JavaScript function named `button1_onclick`. When this function is fired (when the user clicks `button1`), the `trace` method is called.

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head id="Head1" runat="server">
    <title>AJAX Trace Example</title>

    <script language="javascript" type="text/javascript">
        function button1_onclick() {
            Sys.Debug.trace("Button1 clicked");
        }
    </script>

</head>
<body>
    <form id="form1" runat="server">
        <div>

            <asp:ScriptManager ID="ScriptManager1" runat="server">
            </asp:ScriptManager>

            <input id="Button1" type="button" value="button"
                onclick="button1_onclick()" />

        </div>
    </form>
</body>
</html>
```



REAL WORLD

Tony Northrup

Visual Studio 2010 is definitely the best tool for writing and debugging ASP.NET code. When it comes to debugging complex problems in client-side JavaScript, however, you can do better. Visual Studio almost always gives you broad errors that make it difficult to isolate the real problem, and it often highlights code within a library, rather than in your JavaScript.

The most efficient tool I've found for debugging JavaScript is the free Firebug plug-in for the Firefox browser. It provides excellent warnings about inconsistencies in your code (such as a missing quote or bracket), and it gives genuinely useful feedback about problems.

You can view the trace messages displayed by the Microsoft AJAX Library in the Visual Studio Output window. This works if you are using Internet Explorer and Visual Studio, and if you are debugging on the same machine on which the website is running. However, you can also create a TextArea control on the page that includes your JavaScript. If you set the TextArea control's ID to TraceConsole, this tells the Microsoft AJAX Library to display its trace messages to this TextArea for you to view. If the browser you are using for debugging has

a debugging console (as the Apple Safari and Opera browsers do), that console can also be used to view the trace messages. Figure 8-11 shows the result of the preceding markup as displayed to the Visual Studio Output window (at the bottom of the screen).

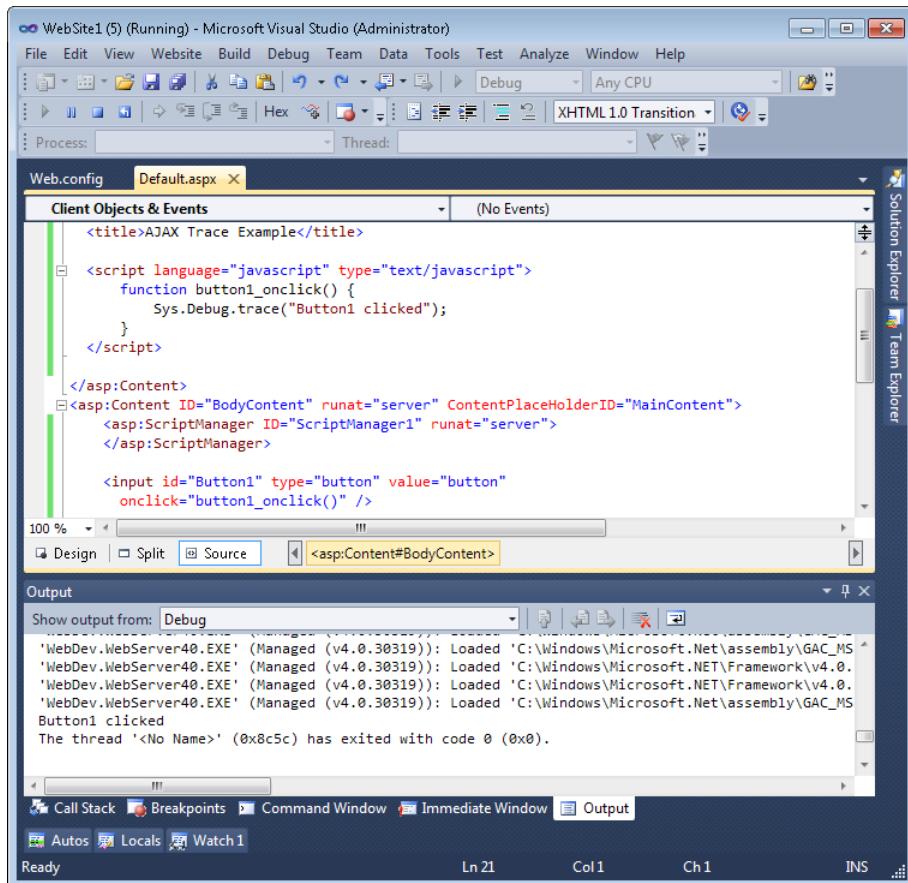


FIGURE 8-11 The Sys.Debug.trace message in the Output window.



Quick Check

1. How can you make trace data display on your webpage?
2. What is the name of the virtual page that you can request to view trace data when the trace data is not displayed on its corresponding webpage?

Quick Check Answers

1. Set Trace="true".
2. The virtual page is called Trace.axd.

Monitoring a Running Web Application

Tracing provides diagnostic information about a page. This can be very useful for troubleshooting problems with pages in a test environment. However, you often need information about the overall health of your application. You should be able to monitor the application and be notified of various events such as error conditions, security issues, and request failures. You can do so by using the features of ASP.NET health monitoring.

ASP.NET health monitoring provides a set of classes in the System.Web.Management namespace for tracking the health of your application. You can use these classes to create your own events and your own custom event listeners (and viewers). You can also use the default features exposed by these classes to monitor most aspects of any running website. This section focuses on the latter option.

The Health Monitoring Classes

The health monitoring system works by raising and logging ASP.NET events based on your configuration. You enable these events based on what you want to monitor with respect to your application's performance and health. The monitoring occurs in a deployed environment. You can use the features of health monitoring to receive email messages about important activities, log information to the event log, and log information to SQL Server.

The first step in health monitoring is to determine which events to listen for. These events are defined as classes. The classes are based on a class hierarchy that defines the data that is logged with the event. For example, a web health monitoring event class might contain information about the process that is executing your code, the HTTP request, the HTTP response, and error conditions.

You can also use the base web event classes in the System.Web.Management namespace to write your own web events for health monitoring purposes. Table 8-4 lists the key web event classes and their basic use.

TABLE 8-4 The Web Event Classes in ASP.NET

CLASS NAME	DESCRIPTION
WebBaseEvent	The base class for creating your own web events
WebManagement-Event	The base class for creating web events that contain application process information
WebHeartbeatEvent	Serves as a periodic event that raises information about your application at set intervals
WebRequestEvent	The base class that contains web request information
WebApplication-LifetimeEvent	Raised when a significant application event occurs, such as application start or shutdown
WebBaseErrorEvent	The base class for creating error-based events
WebErrorEvent	Used to provide information about an error when it occurs in your application

CLASS NAME	DESCRIPTION
WebRequestErrorEvent	Contains request data for request errors
WebAuditEvent	The base class for creating audit (security) events
WebSuccessAuditEvent	Raised when a successful security operation occurs for your application
WebAuthentication-SuccessAuditEvent	Used to provide information when a successful user authentication occurs on the site
WebFailureAuditEvent	Raised when a failed security operation occurs
WebAuthentication-FailureAuditEvent	Used to provide information when a failed attempt at user authentication occurs on the site
WebViewStateFailure-AuditEvent	Raised when the view state fails to load (typically as a result of tampering)

When you know which events to listen for, the second step is to enable a listener (or log). The ASP.NET health monitoring system defines a set of providers (or listeners) that are used to collect the web event information. These listeners consume the web health events and typically log the event details. You can use the default listeners or write your own by extending the existing WebEventProvider class. The default providers include EventLogWebEventProvider, WmiWebEventProvider, and SqlWebEventProvider. You configure web events and web providers in ASP.NET configuration files, which are discussed next.

Configuring Health Monitoring

To configure health monitoring, you turn on web events and connect them to listeners in the Web.config file. You do so by configuring the `<healthMonitoring>` element of the `<system.web>` section of the Web.config file. The `<healthMonitoring>` element contains the `enabled` attribute, which you set to true to enable health monitoring. It also contains the `heartbeatInterval` attribute, which you can set to the number of seconds to wait between raising the `WebHeartbeatEvent` events. The individual events themselves also contain the `minInterval` attribute, which works in a similar fashion.

The process of configuring a web event and provider is as follows:

1. Add an `eventMappings` child element to `healthMonitoring`. You use the `add` element to add the web event class you want to use.
2. Add a `providers` child element to `healthMonitoring`. This indicates your health monitoring listener(s).
3. Finally, add a `rules` element to `healthMonitoring`. You use the `add` child element of `rules` to indicate an association between a registered web event and a registered listener.

Fortunately, you do not need to register the default web events and providers. These are already registered for you by the overall configuration file on your server. Therefore, you need only add rules to your Web.config file to turn these events on. As an example, the following

configuration turns on the heartbeat and application lifetime events. These events are written to the EventLogProvider.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <healthMonitoring enabled="true" heartbeatInterval="1">

      <rules>
        <add name="Heart Beat"
          eventName="Heartbeats"
          provider="EventLogProvider"
          profile="Default"/>
        <add name="App Lifetime"
          eventName="Application Lifetime Events"
          provider="EventLogProvider"
          profile="Default"
          minInstances="1" minInterval=""'
          maxLimit="Infinite"/>
      </rules>

    </healthMonitoring>
  <system.web>
<configuration>
```

Notice that this configuration requires you to know the configured name of the event class and the provider. You can look up these names in your root configuration file. You can also find them on MSDN in the “[healthMonitoring Element \(ASP.NET Settings Schema\)](#)” article. The default configuration markup is listed there.

Figure 8-12 shows a logged event in Event Viewer. Notice that this event fired when the application unexpectedly shut down. This was the result of the firing of the application lifetime event (WebApplicationLifetimeEvent).

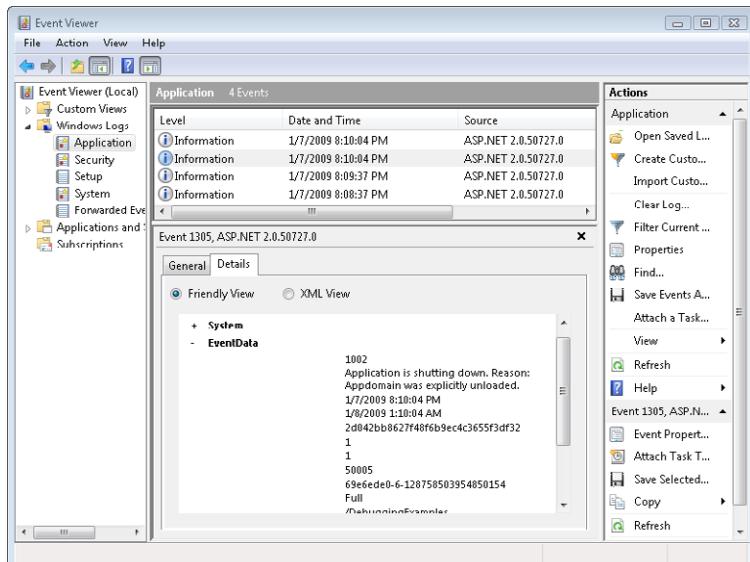


FIGURE 8-12 The web event data displayed in the Event Viewer.

PRACTICE Using the ASP.NET Trace Facility

In this practice, you create a basic website and enable ASP.NET tracing. You then execute the site and view the trace details both at the page level and by using the ASP.NET trace listener.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE Enabling ASP.NET Tracing

In this exercise, you work with ASP.NET tracing to view details about a running page in your site.

1. Open Visual Studio. Create a new, file-based website called **TracingCode**.
2. Open the WSAT from the Visual Studio menu by selecting Website | ASP.NET Configuration.
3. Click the Application tab to display the application settings. Click Configure Debugging And Tracing.
4. Select the Capture Tracing Information check box. This enables tracing for your site. Make the following additional changes on this page:
 - Ensure that the Display Tracing Information On Individual Pages check box is cleared.
 - Set the Display Trace Output For option to Local Requests Only.
 - Set the Select The Sort Order For Trace Results option to By Time.
 - Set Number Of Trace Requests To Cache to 50.
 - Set the Select Which Trace Results To Cache option to Most Recent Trace Results.
 - Close the WSAT when finished.
5. Open the Web.config file. Navigate to the trace element. The trace element should look as follows (notice that the defaults are not listed; only the items that had to be overridden must be specified).

```
<trace  
    enabled="true"  
    mostRecent="true"  
    requestLimit="50" />
```

6. Run the website. Refresh the webpage a few times to write more results to the trace log.
7. In the Address bar of the browser, change the URL to access Trace.axd for the site. This will bring up the trace log. You should see an entry for each time you requested the page. Click one of the View Details links to open a record. Notice that the Trace Information section contains the timings for the events in the webpage life cycle. Close the web browser.
8. Open Default.aspx in Visual Studio. Add the Trace="true" attribute to the @ Page directive at the top of the page. Run the site again; notice that the page now includes the trace information written out. Close the web browser.

9. Open the code-behind file for Default.aspx in Visual Studio. Add an event handler for the Page_Load event, the handler for which will already exist in the code-behind file if you are using C#. In the event handler, use Page.Trace to write out a tracing message. Your code should look as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object, _  
    ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Load  
  
    Trace.Write("Custom Category", "Page.Load called")  
  
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)  
{  
    Trace.Write("Custom Category", "Page.Load called");  
}
```

10. Run the application again. Notice your custom tracing message in the Trace Information section of the page's trace output.

Lesson Summary

- You can use ASP.NET tracing to troubleshoot and diagnose problems with a page in your website. It displays information about the request, the response, and the environment.
- You can use the trace method to display custom trace messages to the trace log.
- An AJAX-enabled page can use the client-side Sys.Debug.trace method to render tracing information to a webpage (by using a TextArea control), to the Visual Studio Output window, or to a browser's debug console.
- ASP.NET provides health monitoring tools (which you'll find in the System.Web.Management namespace) to enable you to monitor a running website. You can configure web events with listeners by using rule child elements of the <healthMonitoring> element inside Web.config.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 2, "Troubleshooting Websites." The questions are also available on the companion CD as a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You want to identify which event in the webpage life cycle takes the longest time to execute. How can you accomplish this?

 - A. Turn on ASP.NET tracing and run the website. After that, review the trace results.
 - B. To each of the life-cycle events, add a line of code that will print the current time.
 - C. In the Web.config file, add the monitorTimings attribute and set it to true.
 - D. In the website properties, turn on the performance monitor and run the website.
After that, open the performance monitor to see the timings.
2. You want to run a trace continuously to enable you to quickly look at the 10 most recent traces from anyone using your website, but you are concerned about filling your hard drive with excessive data. Which of the following settings will accomplish your objective?

 - A. <trace

```
enabled="false"
requestLimit="10"
pageOutput="false"
traceMode="SortByTime"
localOnly="true"
mostRecent="true"
/>>
```
 - B. <trace

```
enabled="true"
requestLimit="10"
pageOutput="true"
traceMode="SortByTime"
localOnly="true"
mostRecent="true"
/>>
```
 - C. <trace

```
enabled="true"
requestLimit="10"
pageOutput="false"
traceMode="SortByTime"
localOnly="true"
mostRecent="false"
/>>
```
 - D. <trace

```
enabled="true"
requestLimit="10"
pageOutput="false"
traceMode="SortByTime"
localOnly="false"
mostRecent="true"
/>>
```

3. You are interested in examining the data that is posted to the web server. What trace result section can you use to see this information?
 - A. The Control Tree section
 - B. The Headers Collection section
 - C. The Form Collection section
 - D. The Server Variables section
4. You want to configure ASP.NET health monitoring to log information every time a user fails to log on to the server. Which web event class should you use?
 - A. WebRequestEvent
 - B. WebAuditEvent
 - C. WebApplicationLifetimeEvent
 - D. WebAuthenticationFailureAuditEvent

Lesson 3: Deploying Websites

With Windows applications, you have no choice but to consider deployment; typically, the client needs to be installed on every user's computer. With websites, deployment tends to be an afterthought, because users already have their web browsers installed.

However, developers often need to deploy code to staging and production servers on a regular basis, which can be tedious. In addition, many websites are deployed to multiple web servers simultaneously to provide high availability and performance. Finally, many web developers must release their applications commercially; this means that other people need to be able to deploy them in environments that the developer knows nothing about.

For each of these scenarios, the developer must create a plan to deploy the application and any updates that need to be released in the future. This lesson describes the different techniques available for deploying websites: manually copying files, publishing web applications, creating a Web Deployment Project, creating a Web Setup Project, using the Copy Web tool, and publishing websites.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Create a Web Setup Project and use the resulting files to deploy your application.
- Update and deploy websites in environments with multiple developers and servers by using the Copy Web tool.
- Precompile websites by using the Publish Web Site tool.

Estimated lesson time: 60 minutes

Publishing Web Applications

Depending on the scenario, a Microsoft .NET Framework website can be extremely easy to deploy. Websites, by default, are entirely file based. This means that the source code is usually deployed to the server. The server then compiles that code when pages are requested. In this scenario, you can deploy a website to a web server by simply copying the files to the correct directory on the server.

Even if you are deploying a new version of your site, in most cases you can simply overwrite the old files with the new ones. In addition, if you are creating a website that works on a single server and is file based, there is often no real need to run any type of setup process, edit the registry, or add items to the start menu. Configuration settings are defined with the Web.config file, and application code is contained entirely within the website folder structure. This means that you can deploy the entire website by using the simple xcopy shell command; no special deployment software is required.

This simplicity provides a great deal of flexibility in other scenarios, too. If your website is to be deployed to an array of web servers (in which multiple web servers host the same website for scalability and availability), you can use any file-synchronization tool to copy the files between the servers. This allows you to deploy to a master server and have the deployment synchronized across the web farm.

If your website has a database, requires special web server configuration, or needs different configuration settings in a release environment, simply copying files will be insufficient. In these cases, publishing a website typically involves:

- Configuring an application in IIS.
- Copying website files to the web server.
- Setting up a database.
- Configuring the website with the production database connection.
- Modifying other configuration settings, such as disabling detailed error messages.

Visual Studio 2010 includes a new Publish Web dialog box that allows you to configure each of these settings once, and then publish a website to one or more web servers with a single click. This section describes this tool in more detail.

Web.config Transformations

Applications that have different debugging, staging, and release environments typically have different application settings as well. For example, during debugging, an application might use a local file system database. However, in the production environment, the application might connect to a central database running Microsoft SQL Server.

Web.config transformations allow you to create separate Web.config files for different release types. Therefore, you can create debugging, staging, and release versions of the Web.config file with settings specific to each release type. To simplify management, you only need to specify settings that must be added, changed, or removed from the base Web.config file.

By default, Visual Studio adds Web.config transformations for the Debug and Release configurations for new ASP.NET Web Application projects. You can view and edit the transformations from Solution Explorer by expanding the Web.Config node and then double-clicking either Web.Debug.Config or Web.Release.Config. If you add more configurations (such as a staging configuration), you can add an associated transformation by right-clicking Web.config in Solution Explorer and then clicking Add Config Transformations.

The sections that follow describe the syntax for adding, replacing, and removing settings. For detailed information about more complex transformations, read “Web.config Transformation Syntax for Web Application Project Deployment” at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd465326.aspx>.

ADDING A SETTING

Web.config transformations contain only those settings that should be different from the standard Web.config file. To add a new setting to a Web.config file that is generated when publishing a web application, simply add the setting to the Web.config transformation file. For example, defining the following Web.Release.Config file will add the connection string to the Web.config file when you publish the web application by using the Release setting:

```
<configuration>
  <connectionStrings>
    <add name="MyDatabase" xdt:Transform="Insert"
      connectionString="data source=.\SQLEXPRESS;Integrated
        Security=SSPI;AttachDBfilename=|DataDirectory|\mydb.mdf;User Instance=true"
        providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />
  </connectionStrings>
</configuration>
```

REPLACING A SETTING

If you need to define different settings for the same value in your base Web.config file and in a Web.config transformation, add the element to the Web.config transformation and specify the **xdt:Transform="Replace"** property. Any settings defined within the element will replace those in the base Web.config file when your web application is published.

For example, to replace the settings for custom errors so that the release version of your web application does not display detailed error information to remote users, you could add the following code to the Web.Release.Config file. Notice the **xdt:Transform** property in bold.

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <customErrors defaultRedirect="GenericError.htm"
      mode="RemoteOnly" xdt:Transform="Replace">
      <error statusCode="500" redirect="InternalError.htm"/>
    </customErrors>
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

You can use the xdt:Locator property to selectively replace settings when a property matches a specified value. Set the value of xdt:Locator to a conditional method call. For example, to verify that one of the properties you specify must match the property in the base Web.config file, use the Match method. The following example would replace an `<add>` connection string element only if the name property matched exactly.

```
<configuration>
  <connectionStrings>
    <add name="MyDB"
      connectionString="Data Source=ReleaseSQLServer;
        Initial Catalog=MyReleaseDB;Integrated Security=True"
      xdt:Transform="SetAttributes" xdt:Locator="Match(name)"/>
  </connectionStrings>
</configuration>
```

If you were to remove the xdt:Locator property, the Web.config transformation would replace all connection strings.

REMOVING A SETTING

You can remove an attribute by using the RemoveAttributes() method and specifying the name of the attribute to remove as the parameter. For example, to remove the `<debug>` attribute from the `<compilation>` section, you would add the following code to your `Web.Release.Config` file:

```
<configuration>
  <system.web>
    <compilation xdt:Transform="RemoveAttributes(debug)" />
  </system.web>
</configuration>
```

Configuring Deployment

You can deploy databases along with your web application. To configure the database to be deployed, right-click the project in Solution Explorer and then click Package/Publish Settings. Then click Package/Publish SQL. The Package/Publish SQL tab appears, as shown in Figure 8-13.

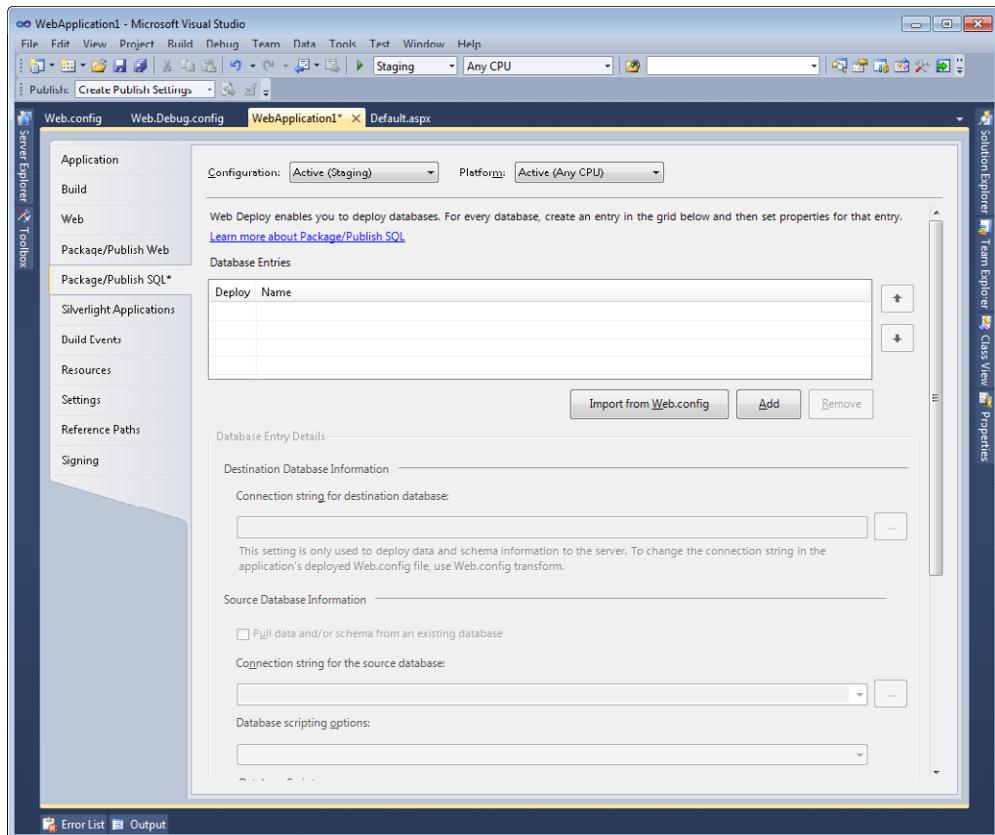


FIGURE 8-13 The Package/Publish SQL tab.

From this tab, click Import From Web.config to automatically configure any databases you have added to the `<connectionStrings>` section. For databases not in the Web.config file, click the Add button to configure a database to be deployed, and then type a connection string or click the ellipses to connect to the database.

If the database does not yet exist on the server to which you are deploying your web application, select the Pull Data And/Or Schema From An Existing Database check box to have Visual Studio create a database schema and optionally populate the database with data. Then configure the connection string for the source database from which Visual Studio will create the new database. Click the Database Scripting Options list to select whether to deploy the schema, the data, or both. Finally, you can add SQL scripts to perform additional, custom database configuration.

After you have configured the database, you can configure additional deployment settings by selecting the Package/Publish Web tab (as shown in Figure 8-14).

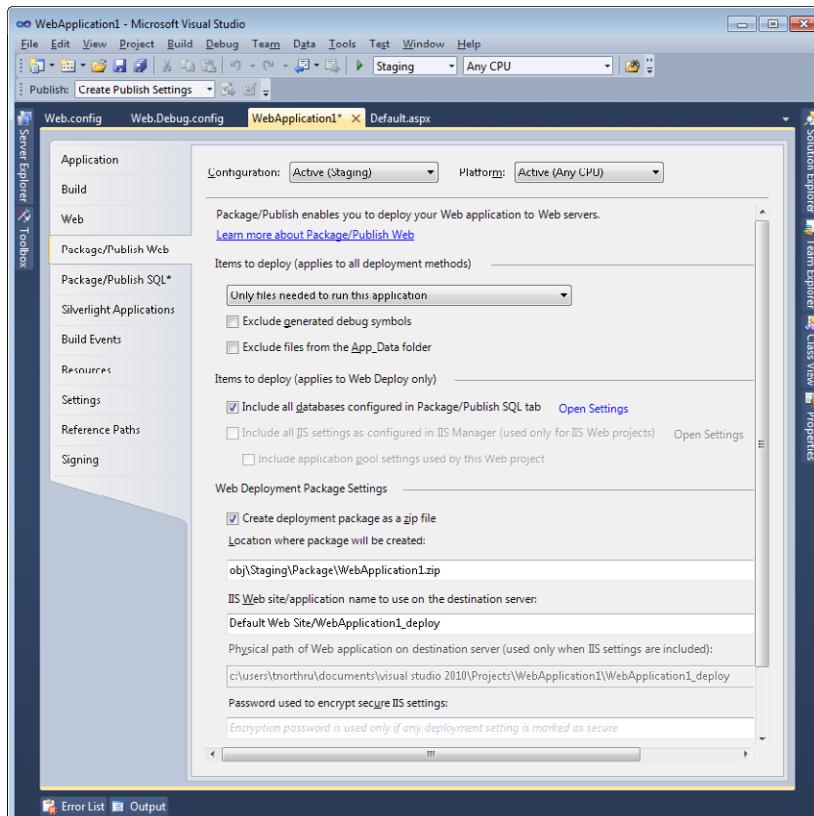


FIGURE 8-14 The Package/Publish Web tab.

If you configured databases for deployment, select the **Include All Databases Configured In Package/Publish SQL Tab** check box. If your application requires settings configured in IIS manager (but not defined in Web.config), select the **Include All IIS Settings As Configured In IIS Manager** check box. This setting also enables you to specify the **Physical Path Of Web Application On Destination Server** check box. The remaining settings define whether Visual Studio will create a .zip file containing all of your project files and where it will be stored.

Publishing a Website

After you have configured the publishing settings, you can publish a web application by right-clicking the project in Solution Explorer and then clicking Publish. Visual Studio displays the Publish Web dialog box, as shown in Figure 8-15.

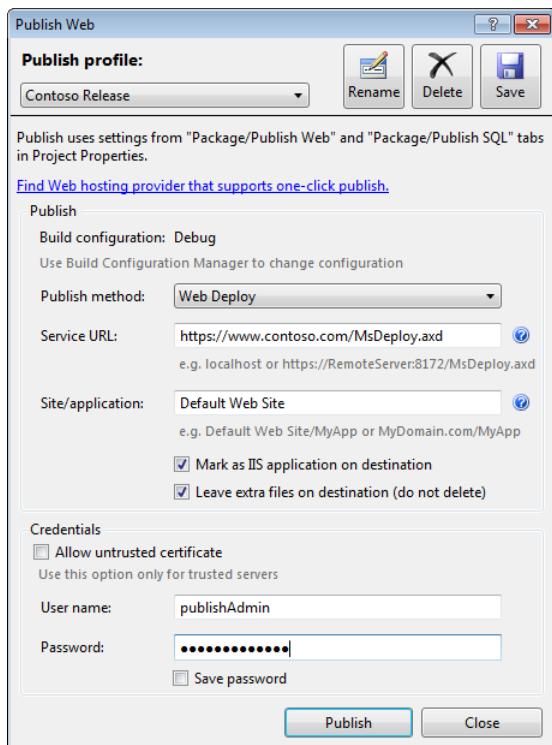


FIGURE 8-15 The Publish Web dialog box.

You can use the Publish Web dialog box to define the publication settings and save them as a publish profile by defining the profile name. The individual settings are:

- **Publish Method** This is the communications protocol that Visual Studio will use to connect to the web server. Web Deploy uses HTTPS (HTTP Secure), FTP uses unencrypted File Transfer Protocol (FTP) communications, FPSE uses encrypted FTP communications, and File System uses standard network file sharing. Any of the settings allows you to deploy files. If you choose Web Deploy, you can publish IIS web server settings, database schema and data, database scripts, security settings, and more.
- **Service URL** This is the URL of the remote server's web service, which the web server's systems administrator will provide for you. If the hosting provider supports the Windows Management Service, the path will include MsDeploy.axd.
- **Site/Application** This is the name of the IIS website, which can include a virtual directory.

- **Mark As IIS Application On Destination** Select this check box if your website is the root of an IIS website or if the virtual directory should act as a separate application from the parent folder.
- **Leave Extra Files On Destination** Clear this check box to delete existing files in the web server virtual directory.
- **Credentials** This allows you to provide credentials to connect to the web server.

After you have defined the settings, click the Save button to save the profile. Click Publish to deploy the web application to the remote server.

After saving profile settings, you can publish the website by using the Web One-Click Publish toolbar; simply select the profile and then click the Publish Web button on the toolbar.

Deployment Packages

If you will not be deploying the website directly, you can package it (along with the database and settings) into a .zip file that a systems administrator can install. After configuring publishing for the project, right-click the project in Solution Explorer and then click Build Deployment Package. Visual Studio generates several files in the folder you specified in the Location Where Package Will Be Created box in the Package/Publish Web dialog box:

- **<Application>.zip** Your web application's files, database, and settings.
- **<Application>.deploy.cmd** The script that the IIS systems administrator will run, with administrative credentials, on the web server. The web server must have Web Deploy (MSDeploy.exe) installed. For more information about Web Deploy, go to <http://go.microsoft.com/?linkid=9278654>.
- **<Application>.deploy-readme.txt** The traditional "readme" file that administrators refer to before installing. You can edit this just like any text file to provide customized instructions.
- **<Application>.SourceManifest.xml** Contains settings to be added to the IIS manifest. You or the administrator can edit this prior to deployment.
- **<Application>.SetParameters.xml** Contains IIS parameters to be added during installation. You or the administrator can edit this prior to deployment.

You must provide all of the files to the administrator, who must keep them in the same folder. You cannot deploy the .zip file alone.

Web Deployment Projects

After the release of Visual Studio 2010, Microsoft released the Web Deployment Projects tool to extend Visual Studio 2010 by adding a user interface to manage build configurations, merging, and using pre-build and post-build tasks. Web Deployment Projects work with both ASP.NET web applications and websites.

Web Deployment Projects provide several capabilities not provided by other deployment technologies:

- The ability to precompile websites.
- The ability to merge all files into a single assembly, merge folders into individual assemblies, or create separate assemblies for each page and control. If you merge content into assemblies, users with access to the web server will not be able to directly access your source code.
- Strong naming and delayed signing of assemblies.

As with publishing websites, Web Deployment Projects allow you to change the Web.config file for the release environment and create IIS virtual directories.

To download the Web Deployment Projects tool, search the Microsoft Download Center for "Web Deployment Projects RTW" or go to <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/en/details.aspx?FamilyID=89f2c4f5-5d3a-49b6-bcad-f776c6edfa63>. After you have the tool installed, you can add a Web Deployment Project to a website or web application by clicking the solution in Solution Explorer and then clicking Add Web Deployment Project. Then double-click the Web Deployment Project to edit its properties, as shown in Figure 8-16.

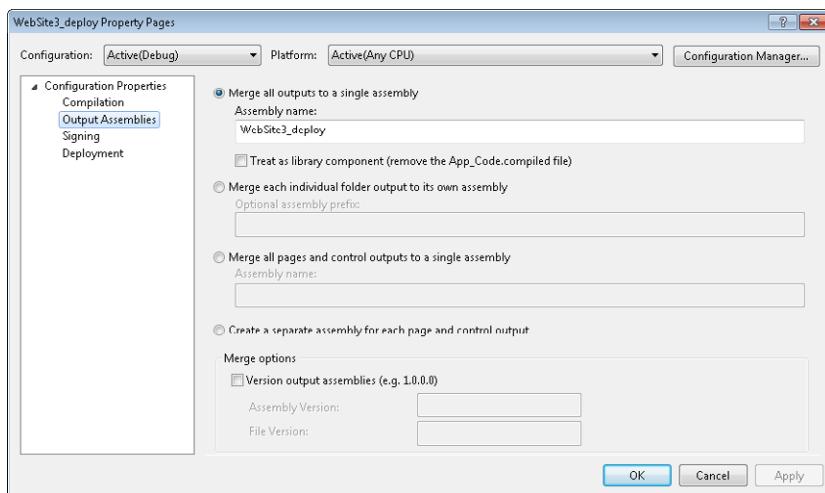


FIGURE 8-16 Web Deployment Project properties.

After configuring the Web Deployment Project, right-click it in Solution Explorer and then click Build to generate the assembly or assemblies.



EXAM TIP

For the real world, know that you need to use Web Deployment Projects when you do not want to store the source code on the web server or when management requires signed assemblies. Because it is an add-on for Visual Studio 2010, you probably will not see any questions about it on the exam, however.

Web Setup Projects

Publishing websites gives you a great deal of control over the website configuration while still providing a high level of automation. However, it requires administrators to have specially configured the web server to allow you to publish the website. Even if you create a package for the administrators to perform the installation, administrators will not be able to easily take advantage of a software distribution infrastructure that requires Microsoft Windows Installer (MSI) packages. Finally, Visual Studio does not precompile published websites.

The sections that follow describe how to create a Web Setup Project, which provides the highest level of flexibility for deploying a website. Although Web Setup Projects are more complex for the developer, they allow you to generate an MSI package, precompile a website, and perform virtually any setup task that your application might require. This section describes how to configure deployment properties, how to configure deployment conditions, and how to deploy websites that meet the requirements of the aforementioned scenarios.

Creating a Web Setup Project

Web Setup Projects are very similar to the standard setup projects used for Windows Forms applications; however, Web Setup Projects provide specialized capabilities that are required by websites. To add a Web Setup Project to a website, follow these steps:

1. Open your website in Visual Studio.
2. From the File menu (or by right-clicking your solution in Solution Explorer), select Add, and then select New Project to launch the Add New Project dialog box.
3. Under Installed Templates, expand Other Project Types, expand Setup And Deployment, and then select Visual Studio Installer. From the list of available templates, select Web Setup Project. In the Name text box, type a name for your project. An example of the Add New Project dialog box is shown in Figure 8-17.

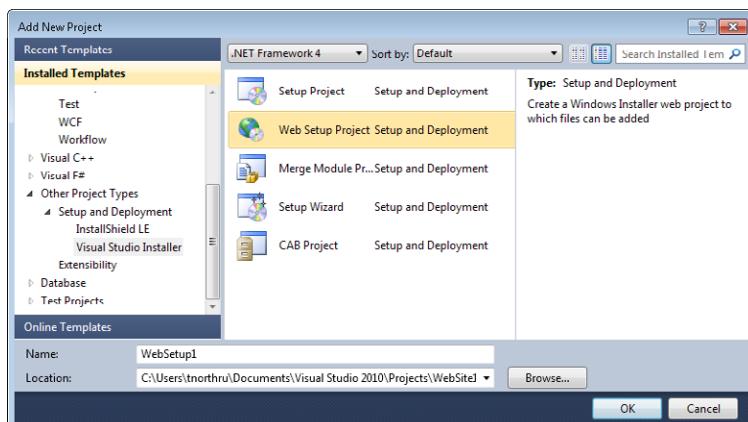


FIGURE 8-17 Adding a new project to a website to create a Web Setup Project.

- After you have created a new Web Setup Project, Visual Studio adds the project to your solution and displays the File System editor. The typical next step is to create a project output group by right-clicking the Web Application Folder, selecting Add, and then selecting Project Output. In the Add Project Output Group dialog box, you select the project to deploy, the Content Files option, and the configuration (which is Active by default). This ensures that your setup project will deploy the contents of the selected project.

After you have created a Web Setup Project, you can add more folders, files, assemblies, and configuration settings that are not part of your project output to the Web Setup Project. This might be necessary if, for example, you have a separate folder containing images that you have not added to your website project, or if you need to define registry values.

Building a Web Setup Project

Web Setup Projects are not automatically built when you build or run your website. You must manually select the Web Setup Project in Solution Explorer and choose Build. You can do so by right-clicking the project or by using the Build menu.

When you build the setup project, Visual Studio validates your code in the website. It then builds an MSI file and packages each element of your site in the MSI. You can follow the build process in Visual Studio in the Output window (View | Output). The script in the Output windows shows you each step and where the MSI file is generated. By default, the file is placed in the folder that contains your solution file. Figure 8-18 shows an example of a process as shown in the Output window.

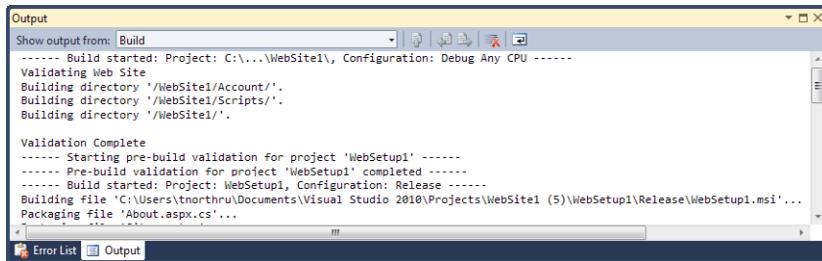


FIGURE 8-18 An MSI build in the Output window of Visual Studio.

Many websites do not require custom configuration. In these cases, you can simply build your MSI file and be ready to deploy. However, more complex scenarios include dependencies (such as particular operating system versions or service packs), custom registry entries, or administrator configuration. Web Setup Projects allow you to deploy websites that meet these requirements. The sections that follow help you with each of these specific scenarios.

Creating Launch Conditions

A launch condition is used to define the server requirements for your application installation. For example, you can check for specific versions of Windows or verify that specific service packs are present before you allow an installation. The web setup template includes the IIS launch condition. This searches for the presence of the correct version of IIS and displays an error message to users if this version is not present, as shown in Figure 8-19.



FIGURE 8-19 The Launch Conditions error message.

To create and manage launch conditions, you use the Launch Conditions editor in Visual Studio. You can access this tool by selecting your project in Visual Studio and then clicking the View menu. You will see an Editor submenu that contains several setup editors, including those for Registry, File System, File Types, User Interface, Custom Actions, and Launch Conditions.

Selecting the Launch Conditions submenu opens the Launch Conditions editor, as shown in Figure 8-20. Notice that you right-click the Launch Conditions folder to add a new condition (this is discussed more fully in the next section).

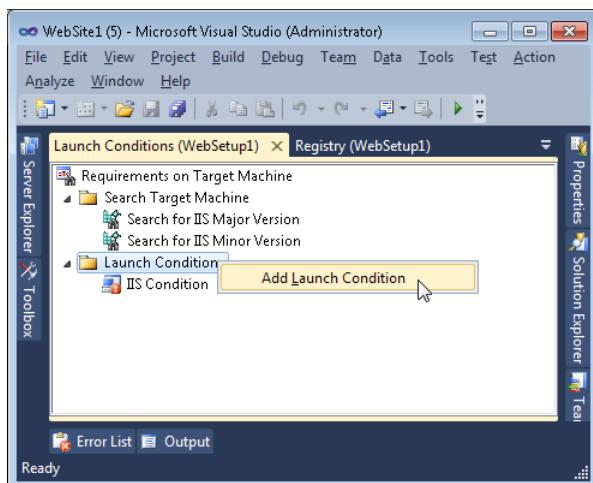


FIGURE 8-20 Using the Launch Conditions editor to configure requirements for a target computer.

There are two main branches of the Launch Conditions editor: Search Target Machine and Launch Conditions. Each is described here:

- **Search Target Machine** This branch allows you to define the criteria to search for prior to installation. By default, this node contains nodes for searching for major and minor versions of IIS. You can add file, registry, and Windows Installer search conditions. Typically, you pair a search condition that determines whether a change is necessary with a launch condition that performs the change.
- **Launch Conditions** This branch allows you to create new launch conditions that define conditions that must be met prior to installation. These conditions can be based on search conditions or other criteria (such as the operating system version). A launch condition can provide a useful message to the user if a requirement is missing. It can then automatically retrieve a webpage. By default, Web Setup Projects include conditions for ensuring the presence of the correct version of IIS (later than version 7, for example).

Typically, you must add an item to each of these two nodes to require a single component as part of your installation. For example, if you want to verify that a specific DLL is present, you must create a search condition under Search Target Machine and store the result of the search in a property. You then create a launch condition that uses the search condition's property. If the required condition is not met (if the file is missing), you specify an error message to be displayed to the user. You can also choose to add a URL that directs the user to the required component for download.

ADDING A SIMPLE SEARCH CONDITION

You can add both search and launch conditions manually by right-clicking the appropriate folder and choosing an item to add. This allows you to create both search and launch conditions at a granular level and decide how to connect them.

To add a basic search condition, start by right-clicking the Search Target Machine node in the Launch Conditions editor. You will have three search condition types to choose from: Add File Search, Add Registry Search, and Add Windows Installer Search. Each is a different search type. Depending on your selection, different property values must be set. The following provides an overview of each search type's options.

- **File Search** This search type allows you to define a search for a file. You set FileName to the name of the file you are searching for, Folder to the name of the folder in which to search, and Property to a variable name to be used for tracking the results of the search.
- **Registry Search** This search type allows you to specify a registry search. You set the Root property to a place to start looking in the registry, RegKey to a registry key to search for, and the Value property to a value you expect to be set for the specified key. You store the results of your search in the Property property as a variable name that can be used in a related launch condition.

- **Windows Installer Search** This search type allows you to search for a registered component. You set the ComponentId property to the globally unique identifier (GUID) of the component for which you are searching. You set the Property property to a variable that indicates the results of your search.

You can also rename your search and launch conditions to something that makes sense to your specific scenario.

ADDING A SIMPLE LAUNCH CONDITION

You can manually add a launch condition that must be met before your website can be installed. To do so, you right-click the Launch Conditions folder, and then select Add Launch Condition.

With the new launch condition selected, you access the Properties window to configure your launch condition. You can set the Condition property to match the Property value of a search condition or to specify a different condition entirely. To allow the user to download software to resolve the launch condition, provide a URL in the InstallUrl property. In the Message property, type a message to be displayed to the person installing your website if a condition is not met.

You can configure launch conditions to require specific operating system versions, specific service pack levels, and other criteria by setting the Condition property to an environment variable or keyword and using both an operand and a value. Table 8-5 lists some common launch conditions.

TABLE 8-5 Windows Installer Launch Conditions

CONDITION	DESCRIPTION
VersionNT	The version number for operating systems based on Windows NT, including Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003
Version9X	The version number for early Windows consumer operating systems, including Windows 95, Windows 98, and Windows Millennium Edition
ServicePackLevel	The version number of the operating system service pack
WindowsBuild	The build number of the operating system
SystemLanguageID	The default language identifier for the system
AdminUser	The tool that determines whether the user has administrative privileges
PhysicalMemory	The size of the installed RAM in megabytes
IISMAJORVERSION	The major version of IIS, if installed
IISMINORVERSION	The minor version of IIS, if installed

To evaluate environment variables, preface the variable name with a % symbol, as this example illustrates.

```
%HOMEDRIVE = "C:" (verify that the home drive is C)
```

To simply check a property for a specific value, you can use the = operator, as the following example shows.

```
IISVERSION = "#6" (check for IIS 6.0)
VersionNT = 500 (check for Windows 2000)
```

You can also check for ranges.

```
IISVERSION >= "#7" (check for IIS 7.0 or later)
Version9X <= 490 (check for Windows Me or earlier)
```

You can also check for multiple conditions by using Boolean operators: Not, And (which returns true if both values are true), Or (which returns true if either value is true), Xor (which returns true if exactly one value is true), Eqv (which returns true if both values are the same), and Imp (which returns true if the left term is false or the right term is true). The following example demonstrates a Boolean operator.

```
WindowsBuild=2600 AND ServicePackLevel=1 (check for Windows XP with Service Pack 1)
```

CREATING PREGROUPED LAUNCH CONDITIONS

You can also create pregrouped search and launch condition sets for common scenarios. Doing so simply creates both a search and a launch condition, with both items preconfigured to work together. You simply need to adjust their properties according to your needs. To create a grouped launch condition, you right-click the root node in the Launch Conditions editor (Requirements On Target Machine) and select one of the following:

- Add File Launch Condition
- Add Registry Launch Condition
- Add Windows Installer Launch Condition
- Add .NET Framework Launch Condition
- Add Internet Information Services Launch Condition

As an example, adding file-based conditions (such as DLL conditions) is a common practice. The following steps walk through the creation of a file-based, pregrouped launch condition:

1. In the Launch Conditions editor, right-click the Requirements On Target Machine root node. Select Add File Launch Condition to get started.

The Launch Conditions editor adds a search condition (Search For File1) to the Search Target Machine node and a launch condition (Condition1) to the Launch Conditions node. The new search condition's Property property value has a default name of FILEEXISTS1. This value links it to the Condition property of the launch condition.

2. You can rename both the new search condition and the new launch condition so that the names indicate the file you are searching for.

Figure 8-21 shows an example of both conditions added to the Launch Conditions editor. Notice that the Search For File1 condition is selected and its Properties window is displayed. Notice that the Property property is set to FILEEXISTS1.

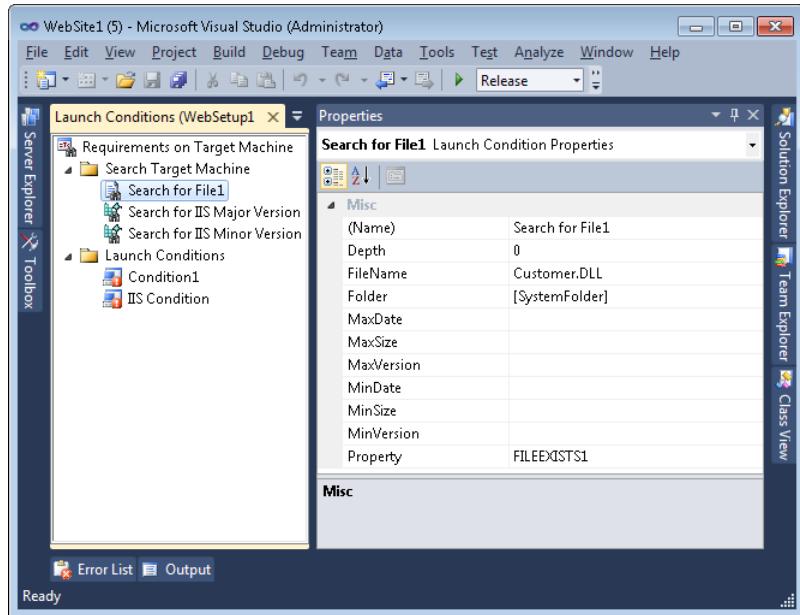


FIGURE 8-21 The file search criterion and related condition.

3. In Figure 8-21, notice that there are several search condition properties in the Properties window. For a file search, you typically configure these properties as described in Table 8-6.

TABLE 8-6 File Search Condition Properties

PROPERTY	DESCRIPTION
FileName	The name of the file to look for. Just specify the file name with its extension, not the folder.
Folder	The folder in which to search for the file. Here you can select a special folder such as [CommonFilesFolder] or [WindowsFolder]. You can also hardcode a direct path to the file. You can search subfolders by specifying the Depth field.
Depth	The number of nested folders within the specified folder to search.
MinDate, MaxDate	The minimum and maximum last modified date of the file.
MinSize, MaxSize	The minimum and maximum size of the file.
MinVersion, MaxVersion	The minimum and maximum version of the file.
Property	The name of the property that stores the results of this search. You specify this property name in the corresponding launch condition.

4. Next, you select the new launch condition and view its Properties window. The properties are typically configured as described in Table 8-7.

TABLE 8-7 Launch Condition Properties

PROPERTY	DESCRIPTION
Condition	The condition that must evaluate to true for installation to continue. By default, this is the name of a property assigned to a search condition, and if the search finds the required file or other object, the launch condition is fulfilled. You can specify more complex conditions to check for operating system version, service pack levels, and other criteria.
InstallUrl	The URL to be retrieved by the setup project if the launch condition is not met. The user can access this resource to install the required component. This is an optional setting.
Message	The message that is displayed to the user if the launch condition is not met.

In this example, the setup project would look for the dependent file as configured in the search condition. The launch condition would then execute and throw an error if the file is not found.

Writing to the Registry as Part of Deployment

Storing information in the registry used to be the preferred way to store application settings. With the .NET Framework, the best practice for configuring .NET Framework applications is to store settings in configuration files. However, there might still be times when you need to add registry entries during setup (although such situations are rare). For example, you might need to configure an aspect of the operating system or another application.

To configure a Web Setup Project to add a registry entry during setup, follow these steps:

1. In Solution Explorer, select your setup project.
2. From the View menu, select Editor, and then select Registry. The Registry editor opens.
3. The core folders of the registry are shown by default. To add a registry setting in a nested key, you need to add each nested key to the editor. For example, to add a setting to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\ASP.NET\, you need to add the SOFTWARE, Microsoft, and ASP.NET keys to the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE hive in the Registry Settings editor.
4. Right-click the key to which you want to add a setting, select New, and then select String Value, Environment String Value, Binary Value, or DWORD Value. Type the name of the value, and then press Enter.
5. To define the value, select the registry value, view the Properties window, and set the Value property. To make the installation of the value conditional, define the Condition property.

Figure 8-22 shows an example of the Registry editor in Visual Studio.

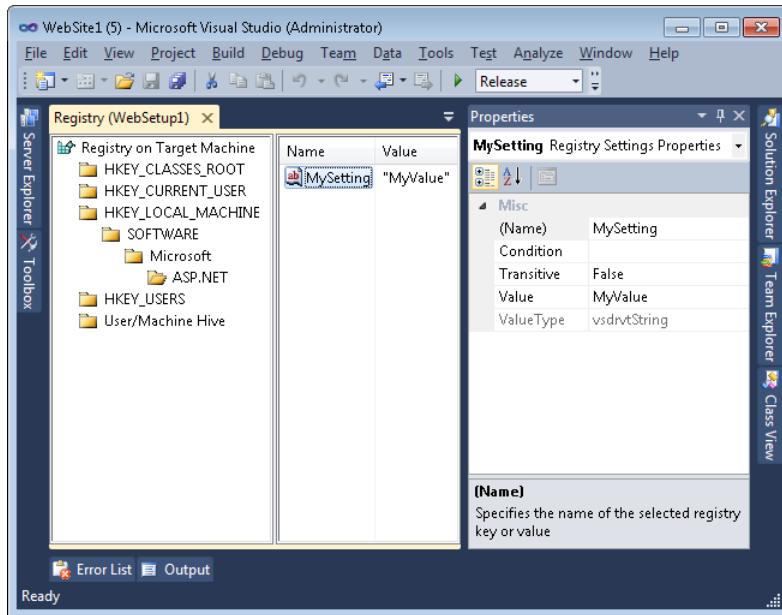


FIGURE 8-22 Adding a registry entry to the deployment process.

By default, registry keys are not removed when an application is uninstalled. To automatically remove a registry key during uninstallation, select the key and view the Properties window. Then set the DeleteAtUninstall property to true.

Adding a Custom Setup Page

Administrators responsible for deploying and managing your websites can customize settings by editing your Web.config file. To enable simpler configuration at setup time, you can add custom setup wizard pages. With these pages, you can prompt users to custom-configure information and then provide that information as parameters for custom actions. When combined, custom setup wizard pages and custom actions enable you to perform the following types of tasks at setup time:

- **Display a license agreement** The Web Setup Project template provides a dialog box template for requiring the user to accept a license agreement.
- **Modify settings in the Web.config file** You can use user input to modify configuration settings without requiring administrators to know how to configure an Extensible Markup Language (XML) file.
- **Perform custom configuration** You can use a custom configuration to prompt the user for information that will be stored in the registry or in another unusual location.
- **Activate or register your application** You can prompt the user for a product key or registration information. Prompts can specify either required or optional responses.

To add a custom setup wizard page to your Web Setup Project, you use the User Interface editor (View | Editor | User Interface). The User Interface editor displays the different setup phases for both standard and administrative installations of your application. Figure 8-23 shows the default view of the User Interface editor.

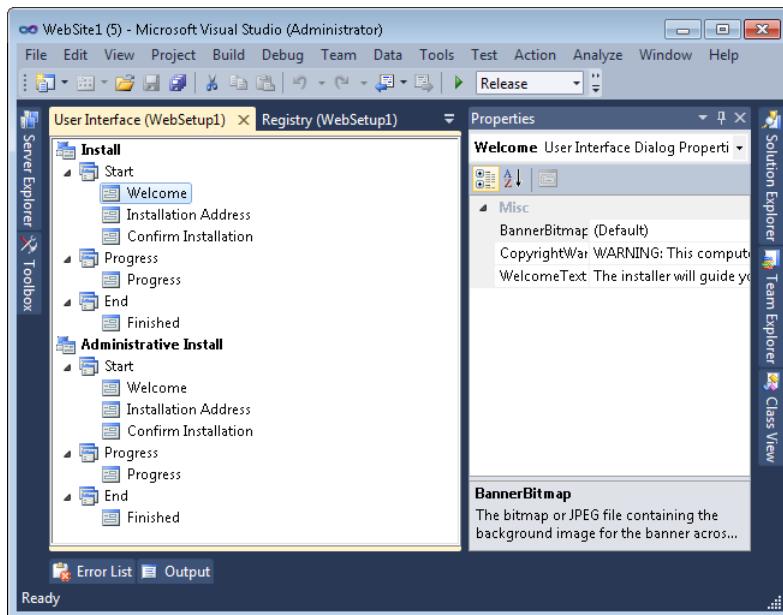


FIGURE 8-23 Using the User Interface editor to add pages to a setup wizard.

To add a custom setup page, you right-click the setup phase to which you want to add, and then select Add Dialog. Normally you add dialog boxes to the Start phase under the Install node. The Add Dialog window, shown in Figure 8-24, shows you the dialog boxes that can be added to the selected installation setup.

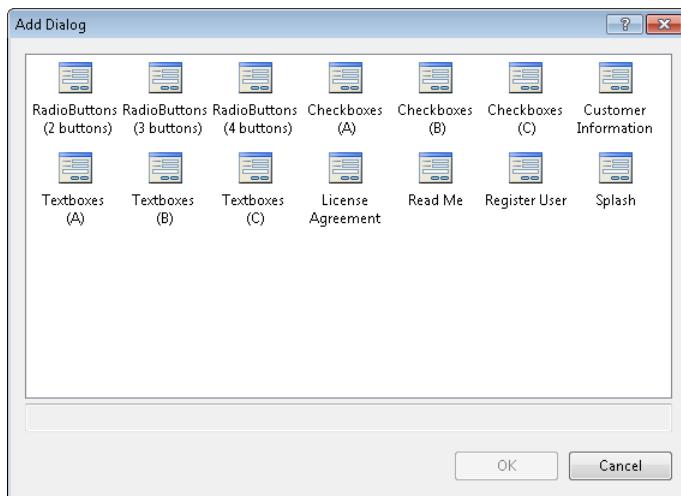


FIGURE 8-24 The Add Dialog setup pages.

The Administrative Install node is more restrictive. There you can add only a splash page, a license agreement page, or a readme page.

Each dialog box template allows you to collect a different type of information during setup. You can customize these dialog boxes only by hiding some controls and displaying different labels.

You customize these controls through the Properties window. There you can configure all aspects of a dialog box; Visual Studio does not provide a designer. To control the information for which a dialog box prompts the user, edit the labels and property names for the dialog box. For the text box and radio button types of dialog boxes, you can configure the label for each field (for example, Edit1Label or Button1Label), the name in which the value is to be stored (for example, Edit1Property or ButtonProperty), and the default value (for example, Edit1Value or DefaultValue). The License Agreement template allows you to specify a license agreement file, and the Splash template allows you to display a bitmap file.

You can also control the order in which your dialog boxes are shown to a user during setup. To do so, right-click a dialog box node in the editor, and then click Move Up or Move Down. You can delete a step in the process by right-clicking the step and then selecting Delete.

When you run the Web Setup Project, your custom dialog boxes appear as setup wizard pages. If you configured pages to collect custom information from users, you can reference that data in custom actions, as described in the next section.

Adding Custom Actions to Your Deployment

Web Setup Projects provide a great deal of flexibility and can meet most setup requirements. If you have more demanding requirements, such as submitting registration information to a web service or validating a product key, you can add custom actions to your setup project. Custom actions can run in any of the four phases of setup:

- **Install** This phase performs the bulk of the work done during setup by adding the files and creating the configuration settings that are required to run your application.
- **Commit** After the Install phase is complete and all of the changes that are required to run your application have been made, the Commit phase finalizes these changes. After the Commit phase is complete, setup cannot be rolled back, and the application must be uninstalled with Add Or Remove Programs if removal is required.
- **Rollback** The Rollback phase runs only if setup fails or is cancelled. In such a case, the Rollback phase occurs instead of the Commit phase and removes any new files or settings.
- **Uninstall** This phase removes files and settings from the computer when the application is removed with Add Or Remove Programs. Often, uninstall routines leave settings and databases in place so that they can be restored if the application is later reinstalled.

You add a custom action to your setup project through the Custom Actions editor. You can access this editor by first selecting your setup project in Solution Explorer and then selecting View | Editor | Custom Actions.

The Custom Actions editor displays the four setup phases. You can right-click the phase to which you want to add a custom action. You then select Add Custom Action. Doing so launches the Select Item In Project dialog box. From here you can choose to add a custom .exe or script file that will execute at the appropriate phase of deployment. If you add more than one custom action to a single phase, you can rearrange the custom actions by right-clicking an action and then clicking Move Up or Move Down.

Deploying Web Applications by Using a Web Setup Project

After you configure your Web Setup Project and build it with Visual Studio, you are ready to deploy it to an application server. To do so, you need to use the files generated as part of the build process. There are typically two generated to the target build directory for Web Setup Projects: an .exe file and an MSI file. These files are described in more detail here:

- **Setup.exe** This is an executable file that installs the files and settings you added to your Web Setup Project. When the file is being run, the setup wizard guides the user through the installation process and prompts for any required configuration settings, such as the website, virtual directory, and application pool (or process). Figure 8-25 shows an example.

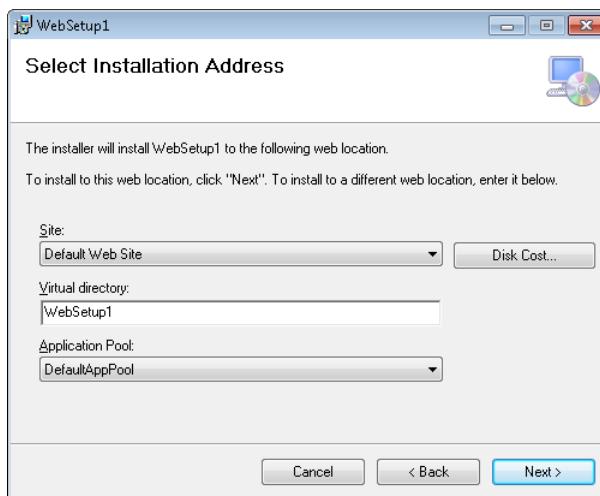


FIGURE 8-25 Web Setup Projects use a setup wizard to install a website.

- **<WebSetupProjectName>.msi** This is the Windows Installer file that contains any files you added to your Web Setup Project. The user can install this file by double-clicking it and launching the setup wizard. This is equivalent to running the Setup.exe file. Alternatively, network administrators can distribute the MSI file by using Active Directory software distribution.

Although most users are probably more familiar with using Setup.exe to install an application, the Windows Installer file is smaller, far more versatile, and familiar to most systems administrators.

Deploying Web Applications by Using the Copy Web Tool

Web Setup Projects are useful if you are providing a website to many users or to an administrative team. However, if you are responsible for updating the website, it might be impractical to log on to the web server, copy over an installation, and run the Windows Installer package each time you make an update to the site. This is especially true if you frequently deploy to a development or test server.

For some development scenarios, you might be able to edit the website directly on the web server. However, changes you make are immediately implemented on that server. Of course, this includes any bugs that might be lurking in the new code.

There are many scenarios in which you simply need to copy changes between two servers. These might be changes from your development environment up to staging, or even from staging to production, in some limited scenarios. In these cases, you can use the Copy Web tool to publish changes between any two web servers.

The Copy Web tool can copy individual files or an entire website. You can select a source and a remote site and move files between them. You can also use the tool to synchronize files. This involves copying only changed files and detecting possible versioning conflicts in which the same file on both the source and the remote site have been separately edited. The Copy Web tool, however, does not merge changes within a single file; it only does complete file copies.

You launch the Copy Web tool from Visual Studio. To do so, you typically open the website you intend to use as the source (from which to copy). You can then right-click the site in Solution Explorer and choose Copy Web Site. This launches the Copy Web tool, as shown in Figure 8-26.

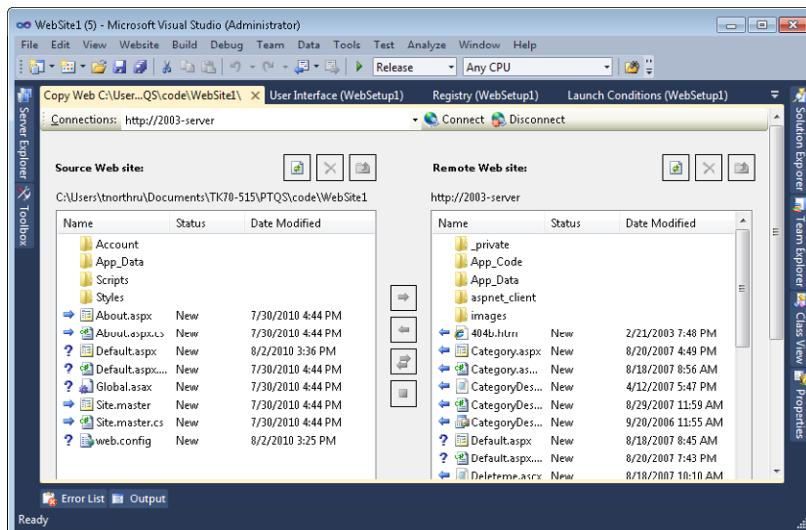


FIGURE 8-26 Using the Copy Web tool to synchronize two websites.

The Copy Web tool displays two panes: Source Web Site and Remote Web Site. The source website is the site from which you want to copy. The remote website is the copy-to site or destination. To set up a remote website, you must create a connection by clicking Connect at the top of the tool. This launches the Open Web Site dialog box, which allows you to find a website. There are four options for navigating to a remote website:

- **File system** This option provides a destination website on a local hard drive or a shared folder. A network drive connected to a shared folder on the remote web server is the fastest way to transfer a website to a server on your intranet. You must have previously configured the website on the server and shared the website folder. This technique transfers your source code across the network in clear text unless you have network-layer encryption, such as that provided by Internet Protocol security (IPsec).
- **Local IIS** This provides a destination website running within IIS on your local computer. You can use this interface to create a new website on your local server.
- **FTP site** This provides a destination remote website for which the server is configured to run an FTP server and allow uploads and downloads to the website folder. You must have previously configured the website on the server and shared the website folder. This technique transfers your user credentials and your source code across the network in clear text, and therefore is not recommended.
- **Remote site** This provides an interface with which you can transfer files to and from a remote website by using HTTP, if you have configured the web server to allow this type of update. You can use this interface to create a new website on your server. To prevent your source code from being sent across the network in clear text, configure the website with a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate and select the Connect Using Secure Sockets Layer check box in the Open Web Site dialog box.

Visual Studio will save configured connections for future use. After the connection has been established, you can copy or synchronize files between the source and the remote website in several different ways:

- **Copy individual files** Select files in either the source or the remote website, and then click the directional Copy Selected Files buttons.
- **Copy the entire site** Right-click the Source Web Site pane, and then select Copy Site To Remote. To copy the Remote Web Site to the source website, right-click the Remote Web Site pane, and then select Copy Site To Source.
- **Synchronize individual files** Select files in either the source or the remote website, and then click Synchronize Selected Files.
- **Synchronize the entire site** Right-click the Source Web Site pane, and then select Synchronize Site.

When you are copying or synchronizing files, versioning conflicts might arise if another developer modifies the remote copy of a file that you edited. Visual Studio doesn't have the capability to merge or analyze these changes. Therefore, the Copy Web tool simply notifies you of the conflict and lets you choose whether to overwrite the remote file with your local file, overwrite your local file, or not overwrite either file. Unless you know exactly what changed on a file, you should never overwrite it. Instead, you should analyze the file, determine what changed, and attempt to manually merge the changes. Otherwise, you might overwrite a coworker's development effort.

Precompiling and Publishing ASP.NET Websites

Projects created with the ASP.NET Web Site template are compiled by the web server the first time a user requests a page from a new or updated website. Compiling doesn't usually take long (often less than a second or two), but the first few webpage requests are delayed while the website is compiled. To avoid this delay, you can precompile your website before you publish it to a server.

NOTE PRECOMPILING WEB APPLICATIONS

This section applies to ASP.NET websites, but not to ASP.NET web applications. Visual Studio always precompiles code files contained within projects created with the ASP.NET Web Application template.

To precompile and publish a website, follow these steps:

1. Open the website you want to precompile and publish. Next, right-click your website in Solution Explorer and select Publish Web Site. Alternatively, you can select the Build menu and then choose Publish Web Site.
2. In the Publish Web Site dialog box, specify a location to which to publish. If you click the ellipsis button (...), you can browse the file system, local IIS, an FTP site, or a remote site, exactly as you would if you were using the Copy Web tool.
3. In the Publish Web Site dialog box, select your options:
 - **Allow This Precompiled Site To Be Updatable** This check box, when selected, specifies that the content of ASPX pages are not compiled into an assembly; instead, the markup is left as is, allowing you to change HTML and client-side functionality after precompiling the website. Selecting this check box is equivalent to adding the -u option to the aspnet_compiler.exe command.
 - **Use Fixed Naming And Single Page Assemblies** This option specifies that batch builds are turned off during precompilation to generate assemblies with fixed names. Themes and skin files continue to be compiled to a single assembly. This option is not available for in-place compilation.

- **Emit Debug Information** Select this check box if you might need to debug the site after you publish it.
- **Enable Strong Naming On Precompiled Assemblies** This check box, when selected, specifies that the generated assemblies are strongly named by using a key file or key container to encode the assemblies and to ensure that they have not been tampered with. After you select this check box, you can do the following:
 - Specify the location of a key file to use to sign the assemblies. If you use a key file, you can select Delay Signing, which signs the assembly in two stages: first with the public key file, and then with a private key file that is specified later during a call to the `aspnet_compiler.exe` command.
 - Specify the location of a key container from the system's cryptographic service provider (CSP) to use to name the assemblies.
 - Specify whether to mark the assembly with the `AllowPartiallyTrustedCallers` property, which allows strongly named assemblies to be called by partially trusted code. If you do not specify this declaration, only fully trusted code can use such assemblies.

4. Click OK to compile and publish the website.

Publishing a website can be an easy way to move a website from a development server to a staging or production server.

Installing ASP.NET 4 on IIS

The .NET Framework 4 was released after Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2 were released. Therefore, as of the time of this writing, no operating system has built-in support to run ASP.NET 4 applications. Before you can run an ASP.NET 4 application on a server, you will need to install the .NET Framework 4. Naturally, Visual Studio 2010 installs the .NET Framework 4 automatically, so your development computer will run your websites correctly with no additional software.

Microsoft released an optional Windows Update package to install the .NET Framework 4 on computers with Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2 operating systems. Therefore, systems administrators might have already installed the necessary components. If not, have the systems administrators install the update.

After the .NET Framework 4 is installed, you need to configure IIS to run ASP.NET 4 applications by using the `aspnet_regiis.exe` command-line tool. The tool is located in the .NET Framework directory, which is typically `%windir%\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\aspnet_regiis.exe` (for 32-bit systems) or `%windir%\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\aspnet_regiis.exe` (for 64-bit systems).

Usually you will only need to use the following options:

- **-i** This installs ASP.NET 4 and updates both the IIS Classic mode and IIS Integrated mode handlers and script mappings. When you use this option, aspnet_regiis.exe updates the standard DefaultAppPool and Classic .NETAppPool application pools to use the .NET Framework 4 version of the Common Language Runtime. This will not usually cause compatibility problems. However, because it changes the configuration of all existing ASP.NET websites, you should thoroughly test your applications with the newer version of the CLR prior to using this option. This option also interrupts running applications, causing active users to be logged out (when you are using forms-based logons) and ViewState to be lost. For those reasons, avoid using this option on production servers.
- **-ir** Like -i, this installs ASP.NET 4. This option does not change the existing application pools, however, reducing potential application compatibility problems.
- **-iru** This performs a -i installation if ASP.NET is not currently registered. If ASP.NET is currently registered, this performs a -ir installation.
- **-enable** This enables the ASP.NET Internet Server Application Programming Interface (ISAPI) extension for IIS 6.0 or IIS 7.0 in Classic mode.
- **-s path** This option updates scriptmaps and application-pool assignments for the specified path and all subdirectories to ASP.NET 4. If the server is running IIS 6.0, aspnet_regiis.exe updates the scriptmaps. If the server is running IIS 7.0, aspnet_regiis.exe maps the application to a new ASP.NET 4 application pool. Specify the metabase path, which might resemble W3SVC/1/ROOT/myapp or W3SVC/1634748923. To find the path for IIS 6.0, search the metabase.xml file in the %windir%\system32\inetsrv\ folder for the name of your website.
- **-sn path** This updates scriptmaps and application-pool assignments for the specified path to ASP.NET 4. Unlike -s, -sn does not apply to subdirectories.
- **-lv** This option displays the installation path of all versions of ASP.NET.

For a description of all available options, see "ASP.NET IIS Registration Tool" at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/k6h9cz8h.aspx>.



Quick Check

1. What launch condition does a Web Setup Project include by default?
2. What are the four phases of a Web Setup Project deployment?

Quick Check Answers

1. By default, a Web Setup Project verifies the IIS version.
2. Install, Commit, Rollback, and Uninstall are the four phases of Web Setup Project deployment.

PRACTICE Deploying Web Applications

In this practice, you deploy applications by using two techniques: a Web Setup Project and the Copy Web tool.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE Creating a Web Setup Project

In this exercise, you create a new ASP.NET website and a related Web Setup Project.

1. Open Visual Studio and create a new website by using the language of your preference. This site will serve as the basis for your setup project.
2. Add some simple pages to the site. This will give you something to set up and deploy. These pages could include order.aspx, product.aspx, customer.aspx, and vendor.aspx.
3. Add a Web Setup Project to your solution. To do so, from the File menu, select Add, and then select New Project. Under Project Types, expand Other Project Types, expand Setup And Deployment, and then select Visual Studio Installer. Under Templates (on the right side), select Web Setup Project. Name the project **MyWebSetup**, and click OK.
You should see a new project in Visual Studio Solution Explorer. You should also see the File System editor for the setup project.
4. Next, you need to connect the setup project to your website. Within the left pane of the editor, right-click Web Application Folder, select Add, and then select Project Output. In the Add Project Output Group dialog box, select Content Files, and click OK.
If you were to build and install your project at this point, it would copy the site pages and code-behind files to the location specified by a user during setup.
5. In the File System editor, expand the Web Application Folder. Notice that there is a Bin directory. This is where you would embed any DLL files that might need to be included by your solution. You would embed these files by right-clicking Bin and selecting Add to add a file. For this practice, there are no dependent DLL files, so you can skip this.
6. Next, add a folder and a file that should be included with the build. To do so, right-click the Web Application Folder in the File System editor. Select Add, and then select Web Folder. Name the folder **Images**.
7. Right-click the Images folder, select Add, and then select File. Navigate to the Pictures folder on your computer. Select a few sample pictures, and click Open.

8. Now add a launch condition. From the View menu, select Editor, and then select Launch Conditions. In the Launch Conditions editor, right-click Requirements On Target Machine, and then select Add File Launch Condition. Rename the new search condition (currently named Search For File1) to **Search for Browscap**. Select the new search condition and view the Properties window.
 - Set the FileName property to **Nothing.ini**. (This file doesn't exist, but you'll fix the error later.)
 - Set the Folder property to [WindowsFolder] and set the Depth property to **4**. This tells setup to search the system folder and all subfolders four levels deep for a file named Nothing.ini. Note that the Property value is set to FILEEXISTS1.
9. Rename the new launch condition (currently named Condition1) to **Browscap Condition**. Select the new launch condition and view the Properties window.
 - Set the InstallUrl property to <http://blogs.iis.net/dmnelson/archive/2009/05/14/updating-browscap-ini-for-internet-explorer-8.aspx>, which contains information about the Browscap.ini file. In the real world, you would provide a link with instructions on how to fulfill the requirement.
 - Set the Message property to **You must have a Browscap.ini file to complete installation. Would you like more information?**. Notice that the Condition property is already set to FILEEXISTS1, which corresponds to the search condition Property value.
10. Build the Web Setup Project. Right-click your setup project in Solution Explorer and then select Build. In the Output window, make note of the folder containing the output files. Open the output folder in Windows Explorer and examine the files that are present. You should see both an MSI and a setup.exe file.
11. Open the folder that contains the MSI file. Double-click the MSI file to launch setup. After a few seconds, you should see an error message indicating that the Browscap.ini file does not exist, as shown in Figure 8-27.

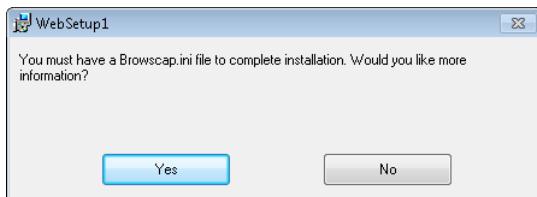


FIGURE 8-27 The MSI file error message.

Recall that we added this condition in step 9. We also set the FileName property of the search condition to Nothing.ini in step 8, which is why this error is being thrown.

12. Click Yes. You will be taken to the InstallUrl set as part of the condition.
13. Return to Visual Studio. Open the Launch Conditions editor for the Web Setup Project.

- 14.** Select Search For Browncap under Search Target Machine. View the Properties window. Change the FileName property to look for the file **Browncap.ini**.
- 15.** Rebuild the Web Setup Project (right-click and select Rebuild).
- 16.** Return to the directory in which the MSI file exists. Rerun the MSI file. This time, the computer should meet the setup requirements because the Browncap.ini file exists in the Windows folder.

NOTE INSTALLATION ISSUES

Depending on your environment, you might run into additional issues. If, for example, you are running Windows Vista and IIS 7.0, you need an IIS 6-compatible metabase for the IIS condition to validate. You can tweak the condition or add the IIS 6 metabase to IIS 7.0 from Control Panel (classic view) | Programs And Features | Turn Windows Feature On Or Off | Internet Information Services | Web Management Tools | IIS 6 Management Compatibility. Another issue is security in Windows Vista and Windows 7. You might have to run the Setup.exe file (and not the MSI file) by right-clicking Setup.exe and selecting Run As Administrator.

- 17.** On the Select Installation Address page, notice that you have the opportunity to select the website, virtual directory, and application pool. Choose a unique virtual directory name and make note of it. Click Next.
- 18.** Finish walking through the installation steps.
- 19.** Open the Internet Information Services console (Control Panel | Administrative Tools | Internet Information Services [IIS] Manager). Find the virtual directory in which you installed the website. Verify that the pages, code-behind files, and images exist.

As you can see, deploying a website can be as easy as installing a Windows Forms application. Although this process takes you through a manual installation of a Windows Installer package, you can also deploy the MSI file in an automated manner.

Lesson Summary

- Web Setup Projects allow you to create executable Setup.exe files and Windows Installer packages (MSI files) that administrators can use to easily deploy your applications to a web server.
- The Copy Web tool can synchronize a website between a remote server and your local computer. This is useful if you want to do deployment and testing on your local computer and then upload the website to a remote web server. The Copy Web tool can also be useful in environments with multiple developers because it detects versioning conflicts.
- Precompiling a website removes the delay that occurs when ASP.NET compiles an application after the first user request. To precompile a website, use the Publish Web Site tool.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 1, "Deploying Websites." The questions are also available on the companion CD in a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You need to add a registry entry to make your application function. In which phase of the Web Setup Project should you add the registry entry?
 - A. Install
 - B. Commit
 - C. Rollback
 - D. Uninstall
2. You need to make a change to an operating system-related registry entry to make your application function. You want to ensure that you remove this change if setup is cancelled or the application is removed from the computer. In which phases should you undo your registry modification? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. Install
 - B. Commit
 - C. Rollback
 - D. Uninstall
3. Which of the following deployment tools enables multiple developers to work on a site simultaneously while detecting potential versioning conflicts?
 - A. A setup project
 - B. A Web Setup Project
 - C. The Copy Web tool
 - D. The Publish Web Site tool
4. Which of the following deployment tools has the potential to improve responsiveness of the website to end users?
 - A. A setup project
 - B. A Web Setup Project
 - C. The Copy Web tool
 - D. The Publish Web Site tool

Case Scenarios

In the following case scenarios, you apply what you've learned in this chapter. If you have difficulty completing this work, review the material in this chapter before beginning the next chapter. You can find answers to these questions in the "Answers" section at the end of this book.

Case Scenario 1: Debugging

You are an application developer for Fabrikam, Inc., a financial services company. You have been told that users are receiving errors on certain pages in the site. You need to turn off the detailed errors in production and direct users to a default error page. However, administrators executing code directly on the server should still be able to see the errors.

You also need to debug these errors. You cannot reproduce them on your machine. Therefore, you need to debug them against the staging server.

Answer the following questions based on the scenario just defined.

- 1.** How will you disable transmitting error detail to users of the site?
- 2.** How will you implement a default error page for users?
- 3.** How will you ensure that errors are still available for administrators to view?
- 4.** How can you debug against the staging environment?
- 5.** How can you apply these settings when you publish the web application in the future, while keeping the current settings for use in your development environment?

Case Scenario 2: Troubleshooting

You are an application developer for Fabrikam, Inc., a financial services company. The configuration changes you made to your application in the previous scenario have been very successful. However, you still have one persistent issue that you cannot seem to solve in development or staging. Therefore, you want to turn tracing on for the specific page and view the results by accessing the page from the server. In addition, your manager has asked you to begin monitoring key events in the system to verify the application's health.

Answer the following questions based on the scenario just defined.

- 1.** How should you configure tracing for the issue?
- 2.** How should you enable health monitoring for your application?

Case Scenario 3: Deploying a Website

You are a developer for Contoso, Ltd, a video streaming company. You are the sole developer of the company's external website, which allows customers to rent and view videos online. The reliability of the application is critical, so the quality assurance team must test any changes you make on a staging server before you make changes to the production web server.

You frequently work from your home. Unfortunately, Contoso's virtual private network (VPN) is unreliable, so you must do your development on your laptop computer. You can only access the staging and production web servers from the internal network or the VPN, but that's not a problem because you don't need to make updates to those servers very frequently. Additionally, your Internet connection is a low-bandwidth cellular link, so you need to avoid sending large updates across the connection.

Answer the following questions.

1. Which tool would you use to update the staging server?
2. Which tool should the quality assurance people use to update the production server?

Suggested Practices

To successfully master the exam objectives presented in this chapter, complete the following tasks.

Debug a Website

For this task, you should complete the first practice to gain experience working with remote debugging. Practice 2 helps with client script debugging.

- **Practice 1** Find some ASP.NET code that matches code deployed on a development server. Deploy the remote debugging tool to the development server. Run the remote debugging tool from the server. Use Visual Studio to open the code, attach to the running server process, and step into code based on a request.
- **Practice 2** Find (or write) some code that contains client-side JavaScript. You can find appropriate code on this book's CD (in the samples for Chapters 7 and 8). Open the code in Visual Studio. Run the webpage in a browser. Configure Internet Explorer to allow script debugging. Use Visual Studio to connect to the browser's process and step into the client-side code.

Troubleshoot a Website

For this task, you should complete the first item for practice with tracing. The second practice should help with health monitoring.

- **Practice 1** Turn on tracing for one of your existing websites. Be sure to do so only in a test environment. Review the trace data about your pages. Look carefully and determine whether there are unexpected results.
- **Practice 2** Turn on health monitoring for one of your existing websites. Again, be sure to do so only in a test environment. Review the data logged over a few days and assess the results.

Publish a Web Application

For this task, complete at least Practices 1 and 2. If you want experience publishing to a public hosting provider, complete Practice 3 as well.

- **Practice 1** Complete the one-click publishing walkthroughs listed at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd394698.aspx>.
- **Practice 2** Configure an IIS Web server to support one-click publishing. For detailed instructions, read "Configuring MSDeploy in IIS 7" at <http://williamjerla.me/post/2010/03/20/Configuring-MSDeploy-in-IIS-7.aspx>.
- **Practice 3** Publish a database-driven web application to a public hosting provider that supports one-click publishing. Although none of them are free, Microsoft provides a list of hosting providers at <http://www.asp.net/find-a-hoster>.

Use a Web Setup Project

For this task, you should complete at least Practices 1 and 2 to get a solid understanding of how to use Web Setup Projects. If you want a better understanding of how applications are distributed in enterprises and you have sufficient lab equipment, complete Practice 3 as well.

- **Practice 1** Create a Web Setup Project that prompts the user to provide database connection information, and then stores the connection information as part of a connection string in the Web.config file.
- **Practice 2** Using the most recent real-world application you created or one of the applications you created for an exercise in this book, create a Web Setup Project. Deploy the Web Setup Project to different operating systems, including Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008. Verify that the deployed application works on all platforms. If it does not work, modify your Web Setup Project to make it work properly. Make note of how the Web Setup Project handles computers that lack the .NET Framework 4.
- **Practice 3** Create a Web Setup Project and generate a Windows Installer file. If you have sufficient lab equipment, use Active Directory software distribution to distribute the website automatically to multiple servers.

Use the Copy Web Tool

For this task, you should complete both practices to gain experience with using the Copy Web tool.

- **Practice 1** Use the Copy Web tool to create a local copy of your most recent real-world website. With your computer disconnected from the network, make an update to the website. Then use the Copy Web tool to update that single file on the remote web server.
- **Practice 2** Using a local copy of a website, make an update to different files on both your local copy and the remote website. Then use the Copy Web tool to synchronize the local and remote websites.

Precompile and Publish a Web Application

For this task, you should complete the practice to gain an understanding of the performance benefits that can be realized by precompiling an application.

- Enable tracing in a website. Then modify the Web.config file and save it to force the application to restart. Open a page several times, and then view the Trace.axd file to determine how long the first and subsequent requests took. Next, use the Publish Web Site tool to precompile the application. Open a page several times, and then view the Trace.axd file to determine how long the first and subsequent requests took with the precompiled application.

Take a Practice Test

The practice tests on this book's companion CD offer many options. For example, you can test yourself on just the lesson review questions in this chapter, or you can test yourself on all the 70-515 certification exam objectives. You can set up the test so it closely simulates the experience of taking a certification exam, or you can set it up in study mode so you can look at the correct answers and explanations after you answer each question.

MORE INFO PRACTICE TESTS

For details about all the practice test options available, see the "How to Use the Practice Tests" section in this book's Introduction.

Working with Data Source Controls and Data-Bound Controls

Microsoft ASP.NET provides several server controls that build on top of the features of Microsoft ADO.NET, LINQ to SQL, and LINQ to Entities. These controls simplify the development of data-driven websites. They make it easier to build webpages that access, display, manipulate, and save data. Using these controls can provide development efficiency when you are building business applications that rely heavily on data.

This chapter first presents the ASP.NET data source controls. You use these controls to configure access to data that you intend to use on a webpage. A data source can be a relational database, data stored inside of in-memory objects (such as a DataSet or an Entity Data Model), XML-based data, or data you retrieve via Microsoft Language-Integrated Query (LINQ). The second lesson in this chapter demonstrates how you can bind to data to allow users to interact with it. The lesson covers using web server controls such as GridView, Repeater, DetailsView, and many more. The last lesson presents the new Dynamic Data features of ASP.NET that allow you to easily create websites for working with the create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations of an entire data model that exists as either a DataContext (such as LINQ to SQL) or an ObjectContext (such as LINQ to Entities).

Exam objectives in this chapter:

- Displaying and Manipulating Data
 - Implement DataSource controls.
 - Implement data-bound controls.
 - Create and configure a Dynamic Data project.

Lessons in this chapter:

- Lesson 1: Connecting to Data with Data Source Controls **687**
- Lesson 2: Working with Data-Bound Web Server Controls **721**
- Lesson 3: Working with ASP.NET Dynamic Data **755**

Before You Begin

To complete the lessons in this chapter, you should be familiar with developing applications with Microsoft Visual Studio 2010 by using Microsoft Visual Basic or Microsoft Visual C#. In addition, you should be comfortable with all of the following:

- The Visual Studio 2010 Integrated Development Environment (IDE)
- Using Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) and client-side scripting
- Creating ASP.NET websites and forms
- Adding web server controls to a webpage
- Understanding how generic types work in C# or Visual Basic
- Understanding how to use ADO.NET to connect to and work with data
- Writing LINQ queries and working with LINQ data-specific providers



REAL WORLD

Mike Snell

Not all applications require developers to write custom, abstracted data layers and reusable frameworks. I've seen many simple business applications that suffered from over-engineering. Many of these smaller applications can take advantage of the simple data-binding techniques built into the Visual Studio ASP.NET tools. These applications can be created quickly, typically do not require much testing, and allow developers to focus on solving business problems rather than building frameworks and reusable objects that might never realize the goal of reusability. In fact, ASP.NET and ADO.NET can now generate a data layer for you by using LINQ to Entities.

Applications that can benefit from this approach often have a common profile: they typically have compressed schedules, are meant to be websites from beginning to end, and might fill a somewhat temporary need. When optimizing for these considerations, you might find that building data-bound applications by using the server controls in ASP.NET is fast, easy, and economical.

Lesson 1: Connecting to Data with Data Source Controls

Data source controls are server controls that you can drag onto your page at design time. A data source control does not have a direct visual component (you use data-bound controls for actual data display, as discussed in the next lesson). Instead, they allow you to declaratively define access to data found in objects, XML, and databases. This lesson examines how you can use data source controls to make connecting to and working with data in an ASP.NET webpage a fast and straightforward development process.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Use the data source controls (LinqDataSource, ObjectDataSource, SqlDataSource, AccessDataSource, XmlDataSource, SiteMapDataSource, and EntityDataSource) to select data and bind it to a data-bound control.
- Pass parameter values to data source controls to allow data filtering.
- Enable data sorting with data source controls.
- Modify data and save the changes to a data store by using data source controls.

Estimated lesson time: 40 minutes

Understanding the Data Source Controls

The data source controls in ASP.NET manage the tasks of selecting, updating, inserting, and deleting data on a webpage. They do so in combination with data-bound controls. The data-bound controls provide the user interface (UI) elements that allow a user to interact with the data by triggering events that call the data source controls.

There are multiple data source controls in ASP.NET. Each is meant to provide specialized access to a certain type of data, such as direct access to a database, objects, XML, or LINQ-based queries. These controls can be found in the System.Web.UI.WebControls namespace. Figure 12-1 shows an overview of the data source controls in ASP.NET.

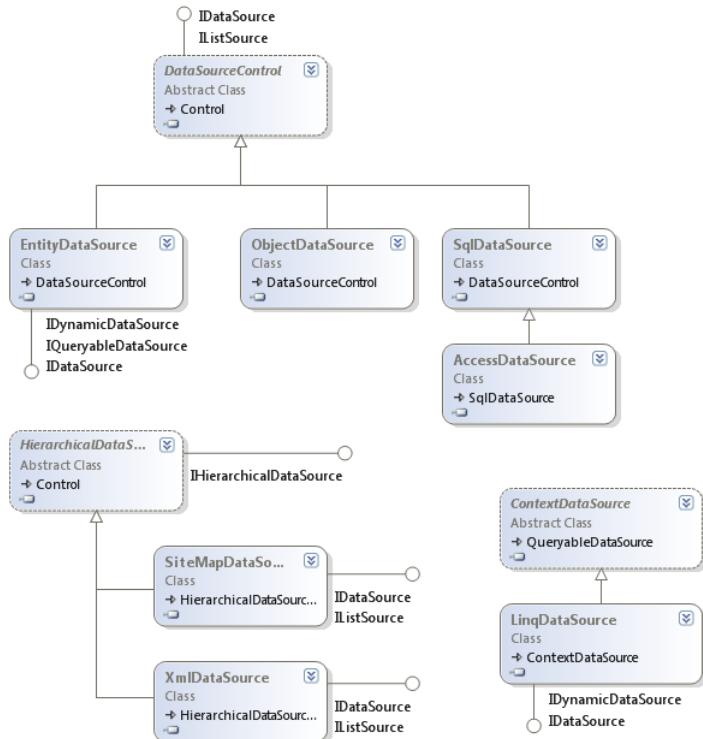


FIGURE 12-1 The DataSource web control classes.

Each data source control is used in a similar manner. You can drag the control onto your webpage from the Toolbox in Visual Studio. You can then use the Configure Data Source Wizard to connect to your data and generate markup for the data source control. Connecting to data with markup (instead of code) is referred to as *declarative data binding*, because you are declaring your data access rather than writing ADO.NET code. Figure 12-2 shows the step for selecting data in this wizard.

This wizard creates the declarative markup used to define the data source connection information. This markup can contain connection information, data manipulation statements (such as SQL), and more. The following shows an example of the SqlDataSource control's markup for connecting to the Products table in the Northwind database.

```

<asp:SqlDataSource ID="SqlDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindCnnString %>" 
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [Alphabetical list of products]">
</asp:SqlDataSource>

```

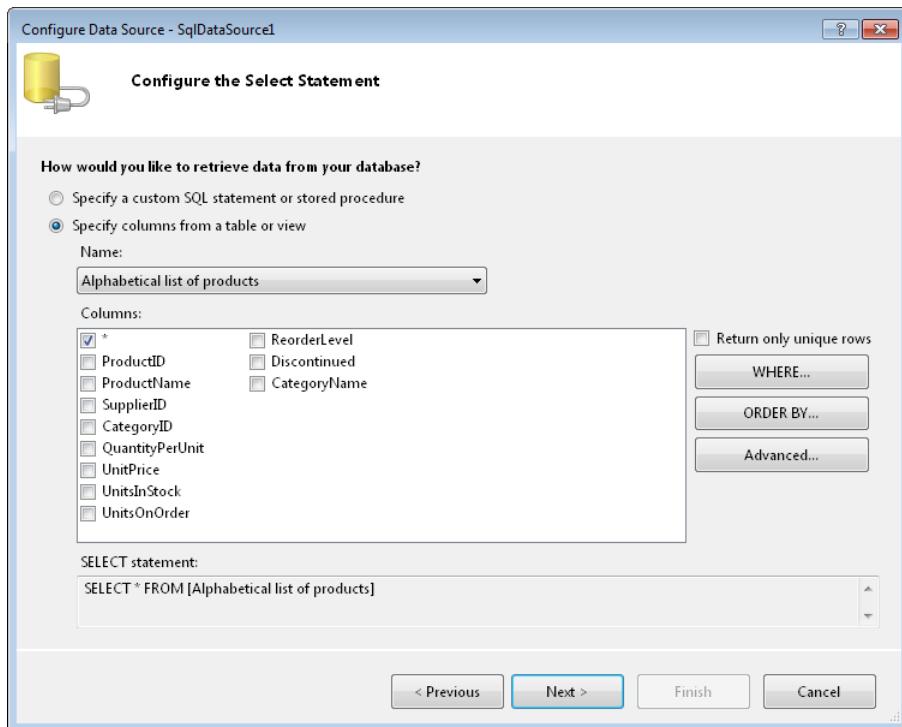


FIGURE 12-2 The Configure Data Source Wizard in Visual Studio allows you to select the data to be exposed by your data source control.

EXAM TIP

The wizard-based UI is a great tool for defining many of your data source declarations. However, it is important that you know the markup syntax for working with these controls. This will help with both programming against the controls and taking the exam. Therefore, the rest of this lesson focuses on the markup (and not the wizard-based UI).

Each data source control is specialized for the type of data with which it is meant to work. The following sections provide an overview of what makes each of these controls unique. The discussion includes some of the common uses of data source controls, such as binding, filtering, sorting, and modifying data.

Using Objects as Data Sources with ObjectDataSource

Many web applications work with a middle tier, or business layer, for retrieving and working with application data. This middle tier encapsulates database code inside classes. Web developers can then call methods on these classes to select, insert, modify, and delete data. With this structure, developers do not have to write direct ADO.NET code, because the code is written by whoever wrote the middle tier. In addition, this middle tier is often reusable across different applications.

You can use the ObjectDataSource control in ASP.NET to connect to and work with middle-tier objects in much the same way that you would work with the other data source objects. This control can be added to a page and configured to create an instance of a middle-tier object and call its methods to retrieve, insert, update, and delete data. The ObjectDataSource control is responsible for the execution lifetime of the object. It creates it and disposes of it. Therefore, the business layer code should be written in a stateless manner. Alternatively, if the business layer uses static methods (or shared methods, in Visual Basic), the ObjectDataSource can use these methods without creating an instance of the actual business object. In this case, however, keep in mind that you could end up with performance issues related to thread contention as multiple requests try to access the same static method.

You configure an ObjectDataSource to connect to a class by setting its TypeName attribute to a string that represents a valid type to which the web application has access. This class might be inside your App_Code directory or inside a DLL file to which the website has a reference (it should not be in your webpage's code-behind file). You then set the SelectMethod attribute to a valid method name on the class. The ObjectDataSource control will then call this method when the data is requested.

As an example, imagine that you need to write an interface to allow a user to manage the shipper table inside the Northwind database. You might have a business object that can return all the shippers in the database and that looks as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Public Class Shipper

    Private Shared _cnnString As String = _
        ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings("NorthwindConnectionString").ToString

    Public Shared Function GetAllShippers() As DataTable
        Dim adp As New SqlDataAdapter(_
            "SELECT * FROM shippers", _cnnString)

        Dim ds As New DataSet("shippers")
        adp.Fill(ds, "shippers")

        Return ds.Tables("shippers")
    End Function

End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public class Shipper
{
    private static string _cnnString =
        ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings["NorthwindConnectionString"].ToString();

    public static DataTable GetAllShippers()
    {
        SqlDataAdapter adp = new SqlDataAdapter(
            "SELECT * FROM shippers", _cnnString);

        DataSet ds = new DataSet("shippers");
        adp.Fill(ds, "shippers");

        return ds.Tables["shippers"];
    }
}
```

The Shipper class just listed returns a DataTable as a result of a call to GetAllShippers. You can configure an ObjectDataSource control to provide this data to a webpage by setting the TypeName and SelectMethod attributes as in the following code.

```
<asp:ObjectDataSource
    ID="ObjectDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    TypeName="Shipper"
    SelectMethod="GetAllShippers">
</asp:ObjectDataSource>
```

You can then use this data source control to bind to a web control (more on this in the next lesson). For example, the following markup binds the ObjectDataSource to a DetailsView control to display the information to the user.

```
<asp:DetailsView
    ID="DetailsView1"
    runat="server"
    DataSourceID="ObjectDataSource1"
    AllowPaging="true">
</asp:DetailsView>
```

Figure 12-3 shows an example of the output.

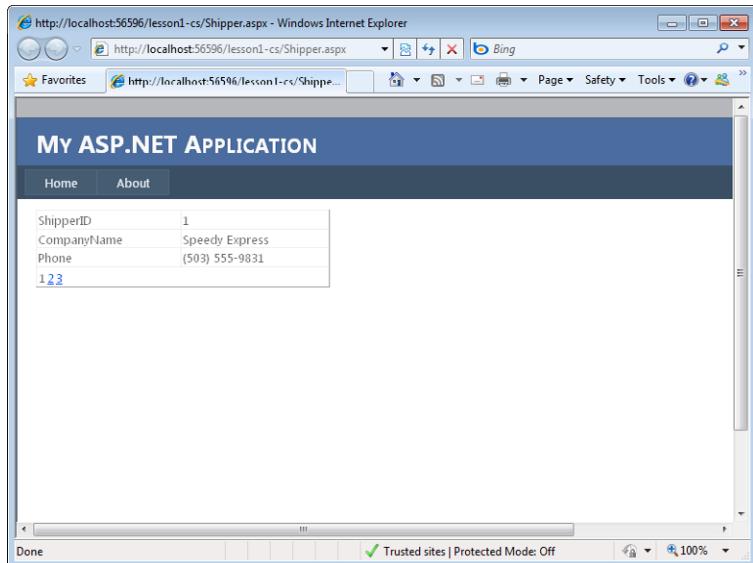


FIGURE 12-3 An ObjectDataSource bound to a DetailsView control.

Notice that the `Shipper.GetAllShippers` method returns a `DataTable`. An `ObjectDataSource` class can work with any data that implements any of the following interfaces: `IEnumerable`, `IListSource`, `IDataSource`, or `IHierarchicalDataSource`. This means that as long as your business object class returns data as a `DataTable`, a `DataSet`, or some form of a collection, you can be sure that this data can be used with an `ObjectDataSource` control.

Passing Parameters

The business objects with which you work will undoubtedly define methods that take parameter values. These parameters might define a filter on the data or indicate values to be used when inserting or updating data. Fortunately, you can use the `ObjectDataSource` to map various page-level elements to parameters to be passed to your objects.

There are multiple sets of parameters you can define for an `ObjectDataSource`. These sets include `Select`, `Insert`, `Update`, `Delete`, and `Filter` parameters. These parameters work in conjunction with the method of the same name. For example, the `<SelectParameters>` set works with the method defined by the `SelectMethod` attribute.

The source of a parameter's value can come from multiple places in your page or site, including `Cookie`, `Control`, `Session`, `QueryString`, `Form`, or `Profile` objects. These options make defining and mapping a data source an easier task. You can also define the source value in code.

As an example, suppose that you have a business object name `Customer`. Assume that this object contains the `GetCustomersByCity` method, which takes a `city` value as `string`. The method then returns a list of customers for the specified `city` parameter. Now suppose that

you need to create a data source control to map to this class. The ObjectDataSource should pass the value for the city to the method from the query string. In this case, you would create a SelectParameters set that includes a QueryStringParameter definition. The QueryStringParameter definition would map between the name of the query string parameter and the name of the method's parameter. The following code shows an example.

```
<asp:ObjectDataSource  
    ID="ObjectDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    TypeName="Customer"  
    SelectMethod="GetCustomersByCity">  
    <SelectParameters>  
        <asp:QueryStringParameter  
            Name="city"  
            QueryStringField="city"  
            Type="String" />  
    </SelectParameters>  
</asp:ObjectDataSource>
```

You might then attach this data source to a GridView or similar control. You can then call the page by passing in the appropriate query string value, as follows.

<http://localhost:5652/DataSourceSamples/Customers.aspx?city=London>

You can use this same technique to pass multiple parameters of various types and from various sources. You can also use this same technique to pass parameters meant to handle inserting, updating, and deleting, as discussed in the next section.

Inserting, Updating, and Deleting

You can also use an ObjectDataSource control to define how data should be inserted, updated, and deleted. The InsertMethod, UpdateMethod, and DeleteMethod attributes can be mapped directly to the methods of an object that are to be called when these activities are invoked. You then use parameter definitions to map values to these method calls.

As an example, recall the Shipper class discussed previously. Now suppose that additional methods have been added to this object. These method signatures might look as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Public Shared Function GetAllShippers() As DataTable  
Public Shared Sub InsertShipper(ByVal companyName As String, ByVal phone As String)  
Public Shared Sub UpdateShipper(ByVal shipperId As Integer, _  
    ByVal companyName As String, ByVal phone As String)  
Public Shared Sub DeleteShipper(ByVal shipperId As Integer)
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public static DataTable GetAllShippers()  
public static void InsertShipper(string companyName, string phone)  
public static void UpdateShipper(int shipperId, string companyName, string phone)  
public static void DeleteShipper(int shipperId)
```

You can map an ObjectDataSource control to each of these methods. In doing so, you need to define the parameters each method expects. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:ObjectDataSource ID="ObjectDataSource1" runat="server" TypeName="Shipper"
    SelectMethod="GetAllShippers" InsertMethod="InsertShipper"
    UpdateMethod="UpdateShipper" DeleteMethod="DeleteShipper">
    <DeleteParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="ShipperId" Type="Int32" />
    </DeleteParameters>
    <UpdateParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="shipperId" Type="Int32" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="companyName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="phone" Type="String" />
    </UpdateParameters>
    <InsertParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="companyName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="phone" Type="String" />
    </InsertParameters>
</asp:ObjectDataSource>
```

You can then use this ObjectDataSource control with a data-bound control such as a DetailsView. The following markup is an example. In this case, the fields are bound individually. This allows granular control over the ShipperId field because it is an auto-generated primary key (identity) in a Microsoft SQL Server database. Therefore, you set the InsertVisible property to false, to make sure that the DetailsView does not try to pass a value for ShipperId to the InsertMethod of the ObjectDataSource. You also set the ReadOnly attribute of the same field to true, to indicate that the value should not be available to change during an edit operation.

```
<asp:DetailsView ID="DetailsView1" runat="server" AllowPaging="True"
    DataSourceID="ObjectDataSource1" AutoGenerateRows="False" Width="450px"
    DataKeyNames="ShipperID">
    <Fields>
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ShipperID" HeaderText="ShipperId"
            ReadOnly="true" InsertVisible="false" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CompanyName" HeaderText="CompanyName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Phone" HeaderText="Phone" />
        <asp:CommandField ShowInsertButton="True" ShowDeleteButton="True"
            ShowEditButton="True" />
    </Fields>
</asp:DetailsView>
```

Defining a Filter

You can also apply filters to an ObjectDataSource. Filters apply to data returned from the object's methods as a DataSet or DataTable. This is because the filter is a valid filter expression as defined by the ADO.NET DataColumn class.

To define a filter for an ObjectDataSource control, you set the FilterExpression attribute to a valid filter. This filter will be applied after the data is retrieved from the database. You can also use FilterParameters to map values from the page to the filter expression by defining a filter expression that contains parameter mappings as numbers enclosed in braces. You then add the appropriate filter parameters.

The following code shows an example. Here, the Customer.GetAllCustomers method is bound to an ObjectDataSource control. When the data is returned, the filter expression city='{}0' is applied to the result. The query string value for city is then passed as the {}0 parameter to the filter expression.

```
<asp:ObjectDataSource  
    ID="ObjectDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    TypeName="Customer"  
    SelectMethod="GetAllCustomers"  
    FilterExpression="city='{}0'">  
    <FilterParameters>  
        <asp:QueryStringParameter  
            Name="city"  
            QueryStringField="city"  
            Type="String" />  
    </FilterParameters>  
</asp:ObjectDataSource>
```

Sorting and Paging

The data-bound controls that work with an ObjectDataSource control can be configured to page and sort the data returned by the data source control. However, it is often better to sort and page this data when the data is requested from the database. Doing so can reduce the consumption of resources on your server.

The ObjectDataSource control defines specific attributes for managing sorting and paging. You set these attributes to parameters of your SelectMethod. The SelectMethod must also define these properties and use them for sorting and paging. In addition, by using these specific properties, data-bound controls such as GridView can automatically work with your data source to provide input for sorting and paging.

As an example, suppose you want to provide a business object method to control how customer data is sorted and paged as it is retrieved before it is shown to the user. You could define a business method as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Public Shared Function GetPagedCustomersSorted( _  
    ByVal sortCol As String, ByVal pageStart As Integer, _  
    ByVal numRecords As Integer) As DataTable  
  
    If numRecords <= 0 Then numRecords = 10  
    If sortCol = "" Then sortCol = "CompanyName"  
  
    Dim cnn As New SqlConnection(_cnnString)  
  
    Dim sql As String = "SELECT * FROM customers"  
  
    Dim cmd As New SqlCommand(sql, cnn)  
  
    Dim adp As New SqlDataAdapter(cmd)  
    cnn.Open()
```

```

        Dim ds As New DataSet("customers")
        adp.Fill(ds, pageStart, numRecords, "customers")

        Dim dsSort = From cust In ds.Tables("customers").AsEnumerable()
                    Order By cust.Field(Of String)(sortCol)
                    Select cust

        Return dsSort.CopyToDataTable()

End Function

Sample of C# Code

public static DataTable GetPagedCustomersSorted(
    string sortCol, int pageStart, int numRecords)
{
    if (numRecords <= 0) numRecords = 10;
    if (sortCol == "") sortCol = "CompanyName";

    SqlConnection cnn = new SqlConnection(_cnnString);

    string sql = "SELECT * from customers";

    SqlCommand cmd = new SqlCommand(sql, cnn);

    SqlDataAdapter adp = new SqlDataAdapter(cmd);
    DataSet ds = new DataSet("customers");
    cnn.Open();
    adp.Fill(ds, pageStart, numRecords, "customers");

    var dsSort = from cust in ds.Tables["customers"].AsEnumerable()
                orderby cust.Field<string>(sortCol)
                select cust;

    return dsSort.CopyToDataTable();
}

```

Notice that this business method defines three parameters: one for sorting the data, one for setting the starting record (or page), and one for setting the number of records in a page. You can then use these parameters when defining an ObjectDataSource. You set the control's SortParameterName attribute to the parameter of your business object that is used for sorting data. You set the StartRowIndexParameterName to the parameter that defines the row number at which you want to start retrieving data. You then set the MaximumRowsParameterName to the parameter that is used to define the number of rows you want to include in a data page.

The following markup shows an example.

```

<asp:ObjectDataSource
    ID="ObjectDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    TypeName="Customer"
    SelectMethod="GetPagedCustomersSorted"
    SortParameterName="sortCol"
    EnablePaging="true"
    StartRowIndexParameterName="pageStart"
    MaximumRowsParameterName="numRecords">
</asp:ObjectDataSource>

```

You can then bind this data source to a control such as a GridView. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="ObjectDataSource1"
    AllowPaging="True" PageSize="10" AllowSorting="true">
</asp:GridView>
```

When the page is run, the GridView control passes sorting and paging information to the data source. However, because the paging is happening before the GridView is bound, the GridView does not know the number of pages to display. Therefore, you need to implement your own custom paging in this scenario to advance thePageIndex property of the GridView control on the user's request. After you reset this value, the GridView will pass the value on to the ObjectDataSource.

Caching Data

You can tell ASP.NET to cache your ObjectDataSource control. This will keep the data in memory between page calls and can increase the performance and scalability of your application if the data is to be shared and accessed often.

To indicate caching of an ObjectDataSource, you set the EnableCaching attribute to true. You then set the CacheDuration property to the number of seconds you want to have ASP.NET cache the data. The following shows an example of these settings.

```
<asp:ObjectDataSource
    ID="ObjectDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    TypeName="Shipper"
    SelectMethod="GetAllShippers"
    EnableCaching="true"
    CacheDuration="30">
</asp:ObjectDataSource>
```

The first call to this page will call the object and return its data. Subsequent calls within 30 seconds (such as moving through data pages) will use the cached data (and not call the underlying object).

Creating a DataObject Class

There are not many restrictions on which objects you can use as the source of ObjectDataSource controls. If you know that your business object will be used as an ObjectDataSource, you can define attributes on your class that make consuming your class inside an ObjectDataSource easier in the designer. These attributes are used to predefine which methods to use as Select, Insert, Update, and Delete methods.

To get started, you set the DataObject attribute at the top of your class. This simply indicates that your class is meant to be a DataObject. Again, this is not required for use with ObjectDataSource controls but simply makes things easier. The following shows an example of the class declaration and attribute.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
<System.ComponentModel.DataObject()> _
Public Class Shipper
```

Sample of C# Code

```
[DataObject()]
public class Shipper
```

You then add the DataObjectMethod attribute to the top of each method you intend to use as a data object method. You pass a DataObjectMethodType enum value to this attribute to indicate Delete, Insert, Update, or Select. The following code shows an example of the method signature and attribute.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
<System.ComponentModel.DataObjectMethod(ComponentModel.DataObjectMethodType.Select)> _
Public Shared Function GetAllShippers() As DataTable
```

Sample of C# Code

```
[DataObjectMethod(DataObjectMethodType.Select)]
public static DataTable GetAllShippers()
```

By defining these attributes, you make the designer aware of your business object's intentions. This can ease the burden of configuring an ObjectDataSource control when large business objects with many methods are involved.

Connecting to Relational Databases by Using SqlDataSource

The SqlDataSource control is used to configure access to relational databases such as SQL Server and Oracle. It can also be configured to work with Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) and Object Linking and Embedding (OLE) Db data connections. You configure the control to connect to one of these database types. The code inside the control will then use the appropriate data provider based on your configuration settings, including ADO.NET provider classes for SqlClient, OracleClient, OleDb, and Odbc.

You configure the SqlDataSource control by first setting its ID property to a unique identifying string value. This property is similar to any other web control ID property. However, the value is used when referring to the data source during data binding (which will be discussed later in this section). You then set the ConnectionString property either to a valid connection string or to page script that reads the connection string from the Web.config file (as shown in the next code example).

You then set various command properties, including commands for selecting, inserting, updating, and deleting data. The command properties you set are based on how you intend to use the control. For example, you use the SelectCommand to define an SQL statement that can be used to retrieve data from a database. In this case, you would use the Text SelectCommandType (which is the default). You can also set the SelectCommandType to StoredProcedure and then provide a stored procedure name for the SelectCommand attribute.

The `DataSourceMode` attribute is used to define how the `SqlDataSource` control should retrieve your data. You have two options: `DataSet` and `DataReader`. The former connects to the database and returns all records as a `DataSet` instance. It then closes the database connection before continuing to process the page. The latter, `DataReader`, keeps an open connection to the database while it reads each row into the data source control.

The following markup shows an example of connecting to a Microsoft SQL Server Express Edition database by first reading the connection string from the `Web.config` file. It uses a text-based SQL statement and a `DataReader`. It then binds the data source to a `GridView` control for display.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource
    ID="SqlDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindConnectionString %>"
    SelectCommandType="Text"
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [products]"
    DataSourceMode="DataReader">
</asp:SqlDataSource>

<asp:GridView
    ID="GridView1"
    runat="server"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
</asp:GridView>
```

You can also work with the data source controls from code. When doing so, you replace the markup attribute settings with object property settings. You first create the data source control inside the `Page_Init` method. You then add the data source control to the page to ensure that it is available to be bound to other controls. The following code shows the preceding markup example translated as code in a code-behind page.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Partial Class _Default
    Inherits System.Web.UI.Page

    Protected Sub Page_Init(ByVal sender As Object, _
        ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Init

        Dim sqlds As New SqlDataSource
        sqlds.ConnectionString = _
            ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings("NorthwindConnectionString").ToString
        sqlds.ID = "SqlDataSource1"
        sqlds.SelectCommandType = SqlDataSourceCommandType.Text
        sqlds.SelectCommand = "SELECT * FROM [products]"
        sqlds.DataSourceMode = SqlDataSourceMode.DataReader
        Me.Controls.Add(sqlds)
    End Sub

    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object, _
        ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Load
        GridView1.DataSourceID = "SqlDataSource1"
    End Sub

End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public partial class DefaultCs : System.Web.UI.Page
{
    protected void Page_Init(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        SqlDataSource sqlds = new SqlDataSource();
        sqlds.ConnectionString =
            ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings[
                "NorthwindConnectionString"].ToString();
        sqlds.ID = "SqlDataSource1";
        sqlds.SelectCommandType = SqlDataSourceCommandType.Text;
        sqlds.SelectCommand = "SELECT * FROM [products]";
        sqlds.DataSourceMode = SqlDataSourceMode.DataReader;
        this.Controls.Add(sqlds);
    }

    protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        GridView1.DataSourceID = "SqlDataSource1";
    }
}
```

Working with data source controls in code is less common than working with them in markup. Declaring your data source in markup is very straightforward; the attributes you define in markup are the same as the properties you set in code. Therefore, the majority of this lesson assumes that you are working with markup only, and will not provide examples in code.

Using Parameters

The SqlDataSource control can also be configured to use parameters for Select, Insert, Update, Filter, and Delete commands. This is done by defining parameters inside your SQL statements by using the @ param syntax. You then map parameter values to these parameter definitions by using parameter declarations.

As an example, suppose that you are creating a SqlDataSource control to return products based on their category ID. The category ID will be passed to the page as a value from the query string. You can define this parameter inside the SelectParameters collection as a QueryStringParameter. The following shows the markup of this example.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource
    ID="SqlDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindConnectionString %>"
    SelectCommandType="Text"
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [products] WHERE CategoryID=@CategoryId"
    DataSourceMode="DataSet">
    <SelectParameters>
        <asp:QueryStringParameter
            Name="CategoryId"
            QueryStringField="catId"
            Type="Int16" />
    </SelectParameters>
</asp:SqlDataSource>
```

You can then bind this control to a GridView (or similar control). When the page is accessed, the data is filtered based on the query string parameter. The following shows an example Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for this call:

<http://localhost:5652/DataSourceSamples/Products.aspx?catId=2>

You use the same method for defining InsertParameters, UpdateParameters, and DeleteParameters. These parameters are mapped to the respective InsertCommand, UpdateCommand, and DeleteCommand commands. Controls such as GridView and DetailsView work to trigger update, insert, and delete actions and, in doing so, pass parameter values to the appropriate command. This is similar to what was demonstrated previously in the ObjectDataSource section.

Filtering Data with SqlDataSource

As with the ObjectDataSource control, you can also filter data inside a SqlDataSource control. Again, the data must be a DataSet because the filter is applied to the ADO.NET DataColumn or DataView.RowFilter property.

To define a filter, you set the FilterExpression attribute to a valid filter. This filter will be applied after the data is retrieved from the database. You can also use FilterParameters to map values from the page to the filter expression by defining a filter expression that contains parameter mappings as numbers enclosed in braces. You then add the appropriate filter parameters.

The following code shows an example of a SqlDataSource control that first selects all products from the database. It then applies a FilterExpression to show only those products that have been discontinued.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource  
    ID="SqlDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindConnectionString %>"  
    Select CommandType="Text"  
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [products]"  
    DataSourceMode="DataSet"  
    FilterExpression="Discontinued=true">  
</asp:SqlDataSource>
```

Caching SqlDataSource Data

As with ObjectDataSource, you can also configure a SqlDataSource control to be cached by the server. When doing so, however, you must set the DataSourceMode property to DataSet. DataReader sources cannot be cached, because they would hold open a connection to the server.

You indicate the caching of a SqlDataSource control the same way you would an ObjectDataSource control: by setting the EnableCaching and CacheDuration attributes. The following shows an example.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource  
    ID="SqlDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindConnectionString %>"  
    SelectCommandType="Text"  
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [products]"  
    DataSourceMode="DataSet"  
    EnableCaching="True"  
    CacheDuration="30">  
</asp:SqlDataSource>
```

Working with Access Data Files and AccessDataSource Controls

The AccessDataSource control is meant to connect to and work with Microsoft Access file-based databases (.mdb files). This control is very similar to the SqlDataSource control. In fact, it derives from the SqlDataSource class. Therefore, you can expect to work with the AccessDataSource control in a very similar manner when passing parameters, caching, filtering data, and calling Access stored procedures.

NOTE THE NEW ACCESS DATABASE ENGINE

The Access database engine has been changed in recent versions from Microsoft Jet to one based on SQL Server. The AccessDataSource control is used to work with Jet-based databases. These can be identified by the .mdf file extension. Newer Access files have the .accdb extension. You can connect to these database files by using the SqlDataSource control (not the AccessDataSource control).

One of the main differences between the AccessDataSource control and the SqlDataSource control is how they connect to the database. The AccessDataSource control replaces the SqlDataSource.ConnectionString property with the DataFile property. You pass a path to a database file to this property to define a connection to an Access database. The following markup shows how you configure the AccessDataSource control to connect to an .mdb file in the App_Data folder.

```
<asp:AccessDataSource  
    ID="AccessDataSource1" runat="server"  
    DataFile="~/App_Data/AccessNorthwind.mdb"  
    SelectCommand="SELECT * FROM [Products]">  
</asp:AccessDataSource>
```

The code inside this data source control uses the ADO.NET System.Data.OleDb provider for connecting to an Access data file. Of course, this code is abstracted for you by the control itself. You need only define the markup to begin accessing and working with data in the Access file.

NOTE CONFIGURING ACCESS TO A FILE-BASED DATABASE

To ensure that the webpage has access to this file, configure the ASP.NET process identity to allow file-based access to the .mdb file.

Connecting to an Entity Model by Using EntityDataSource

The EntityDataSource control works much like the SqlDataSource control. However, the SqlDataSource control is tied to a specific database model, whereas the EntityDataSource control works with an Entity Data Model that gets mapped to an actual data store (see Chapter 11, “Connecting to and Querying Data with LINQ,” for more information on creating and working with Entity Framework’s Entity Data Model).

You configure the EntityDataSource control to provide a connection to the entity model’s underlying data store, which is done through the ConnectionString property. This value is set to a named entity model connection string that uses the System.Data.EntityClient provider. The connection string is generated and stored in the Web.config file when you set up your entity model (EDMX file).

You can then indicate an EntitySetName to point to the data you want to select and expose through the data source control. This entity set is a named collection of data in your model. Alternatively, you can use the CommandText attribute to define a custom LINQ query to define your selection (more on this later in this section).

The following markup shows an example. This assumes that an entity model named NorthwindEntities has been created. Notice the connection string reference. This string is stored in the Web.config file. Also, notice that the EntitySetName is set to Orders. This is used to establish a default entity set and will return all orders in the data store. Finally, the results are bound to a GridView control for display.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwindEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwindEntities"
    EnableFlattening="False"
    EntitySetName="Orders">
</asp:EntityDataSource>

<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="EntityDataSource1">
</asp:GridView>
```

Selecting Data to Return

You saw in the previous example that you can return the entire collection for an entity by using the EntitySetName attribute. The EntityDataSource allows you to get more specific with your selection. You can do so through the Select attribute. You define a string in this attribute that will be passed to ObjectQuery<T>. In this way, you can write LINQ to Entities code against the data source for the Select, Where, and Order By attributes.

For example, suppose you want to return only specific fields from the OrderDetails collection in an entity model. You might also want to rename some of these fields and even generate a field based on a calculation. As with a LINQ to Entities query, you can specify a Select statement that will do just that. Recall from Chapter 11 that this is called a *projection*, because you are projecting the results into a collection of a new, anonymous type. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EnableFlattening="False"
    EntitySetName="OrderDetails"
    Select="it.OrderId as Id, it.UnitPrice, it.Quantity, it.UnitPrice * it.Quantity as
    LineItemTotal">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

SPECIFYING A CUSTOM QUERY

You can specify an entire query (and not just the Select) by using the CommandText property of the EntityDataSource. In this case, you need not set the EntitySetName. The query will indicate the data to select. This query is written as an Entity SQL expression, which uses different syntax than LINQ for Entities. The following markup shows an example (line breaks in the CommandText property are added for clarity).

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    CommandText =
    "Select o.OrderId as Id, o.UnitPrice, o.Quantity,
        o.UnitPrice * o.Quantity as LineItemTotal
    from OrderDetails as o
    where o.Discount > 0
    order by o.ProductId">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

Note that you can write the same query by using the independent Select, Where, and OrderBy properties of the EntityDataSource control. You will see more on this in upcoming sections.

SPECIFYING OBJECTS TO RETURN

You can specify that additional object collections be returned in the result (in addition to the collection being queried). These additional objects are added to your collection by using the `Include` attribute. These objects should exist as a navigation property in the entity data model. For example, the following markup returns all Orders. For each order object, the results will also include the OrderDetails collection.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EntitySetName="Orders"
    Include="OrderDetails">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

Ordering Results

You can use the `OrderBy` property of the EntityDataSource control to specify an order by statement that will be passed to `ObjectQuery<T>`. The following markup shows an example of ordering the OrderDetails entity by `ProductId`.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EntitySetName="OrderDetails"
    OrderBy="it.ProductId">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

Filtering Data

You can use the `Where` property of the EntityDataSource control to specify a `Where` statement that will be passed to `ObjectQuery<T>` without modification. The following markup shows an example of filtering orders for only those that have a discount applied.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EntitySetName="OrderDetails"
    OrderBy="it.ProductId"
    Where="it.Discount > 0">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

Defining Parameters

The EntityDataSource control allows you to define several parameters that can be used with the `@ paramName` syntax inside various properties, including `Select`, `Where`, and `CommandText`. These `ParameterCollection` objects include `CommandParameters`, `DeleteParameters`, `OrderByParameters`, `SelectParameters`, `UpdateParameters`, and `WhereParameters`.

Each of these parameter collections might contain an ASP.NET parameter control such as ControlParameter, FormParameter, QueryStringParameter, CookieParameter, and similar parameters. This allows you to pass values from your website dynamically to the EntityDataSource control.

As an example, suppose you want to filter orders based on their value. You might ask a user to enter a value into a TextBox control. You could then create a <ControlParameter/> in the WhereParameters collection of an EntityDataSource control to map the TextBox.Text field to the Where clause. The following is an example; the parameter is defined as @OrderValue, which aligns with the parameter name, OrderValue.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EntitySetName="OrderDetails"
    OrderBy="it.ProductId"
    Where="(it.Quantity * it.UnitPrice) > @OrderValue">
    <WhereParameters>
        <asp:ControlParameter
            ControlID="TextBoxValue" Name="OrderValue"
            DbType="Int32" PropertyName="Text"
            DefaultValue="0" />
    </WhereParameters>
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

```
Enter an order value on which to filter:<br />
<asp:TextBox ID="TextBoxValue" runat="server"></asp:TextBox>
<asp:Button ID="ButtonUpdate" runat="server" Text="Button" />

<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="EntityDataSource1">
</asp:GridView>
```

Note that you can set the AutoGenerateWhereClause or AutoGenerateOrderByClause attributes to true if you want to have the EntityDataSource control automatically map a parameter to a field in the results. The parameter and field must have the same name for this to work.

Paging, Sorting, Editing, and Updating Data

The EntityDataSource control supports a few additional attributes that you can use to enable specific scenarios. These attributes include AutoPage, AutoSort, EnableInsert, EnableUpdate, and EnableDelete. These are all Boolean properties that, if set to true, will enable these features for your EntityDataSource. Of course, the features are provided by the underlying entity model; they then need to be exposed via a visible control such as a GridView.

The following markup shows an example of both a fully enabled EntityDataSource control and a GridView control that leverages all of these features. A user can access this page and view, sort, edit, update, and delete data.

```

<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntities"
    EntitySetName="OrderDetails"
    AutoPage="true"
    AutoSort="true"
    EnableDelete="true"
    EnableInsert="true"
    EnableUpdate="true">
</asp:EntityDataSource>

<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="EntityDataSource1"
    AllowPaging="True"
    AllowSorting="True">
    <Columns>
        <asp:CommandField
            ShowDeleteButton="True"
            ShowEditButton="True"
            ShowSelectButton="True" />
    </Columns>
</asp:GridView>

```

Connecting to XML Data by Using XmlDataSource

The XmlDataSource control provides a means to create a binding connection between controls on your page and an XML file. The XmlDataSource control is best used when you want to bind to XML data that is represented as hierarchical. In these cases, the outer elements of the XML represent data records. The child elements can themselves be subrecords related to the outer records. In addition, the child elements and attributes of these outer “record” elements are typically bound to as fields. You can think of these fields as columns of data on the record. Due to this hierarchical nature, the XmlDataSource control is typically bound to controls that show data in a hierarchical manner, such as the TreeView control. However, XmlDataSource controls can be used to display data in tabular formats, too.

You configure the XmlDataSource control at design time to point to an XML file. XML data in your project is typically stored in your project’s App_Data folder. To bind to a file, you set the DataFile attribute on the data source control to point to the path of the XML file. The following code shows an example of defining an XmlDataSource control that points to a file containing product data.

```

<asp:XmlDataSource
    ID="XmlDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    DataFile="~/App_Data/products.xml" >
</asp:XmlDataSource>

```

You can also bind directly to a string value that represents XML. The XmlDataSource class provides the Data property for connecting to a string value in your code-behind page.

Transforming XML with the XmlDataSource Control

You can use the XmlDataSource control to define an Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL) transformation to change the shape and content of your XML data. You do so by setting the TransformFile attribute to a valid XSL file. The XSL file will be applied to your XML data after your XML is loaded into memory and before the XML is bound for output.

As an example, consider the following XML file that defines a set of products across varied categories.

```
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="yes"?>
<Products>
    <Product>
        <Category>Beverages</Category>
        <Name>Chai</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>10 boxes x 20 bags</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>18.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Condiments</Category>
        <Name>Aniseed Syrup</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>12 - 550 ml bottles</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>10.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Condiments</Category>
        <Name>Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>48 - 6 oz jars</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>22.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Produce</Category>
        <Name>Uncle Bob's Organic Dried Pears</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>12 - 1 lb pkgs.</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>30.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Beverages</Category>
        <Name>Guaraná Fantástica</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>12 - 355 ml cans</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>4.5000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Beverages</Category>
        <Name>Sasquatch Ale</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>24 - 12 oz bottles</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>14.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
    <Product>
        <Category>Beverages</Category>
        <Name>Steeleye Stout</Name>
        <QuantityPerUnit>24 - 12 oz bottles</QuantityPerUnit>
        <UnitPrice>18.0000</UnitPrice>
    </Product>
</Products>
```

Suppose that you have to transform this data by first sorting it and then adding descriptive text to each field to help a user when viewing the data in a TreeView control. In this case, you can write an XSL transform file. The following code represents an example.

```
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">
  <xsl:template match="Products">
    <Products>
      <xsl:for-each select="Product">
        <xsl:sort select="Name" order="ascending" />
        <Product>
          <Name>
            <xsl:value-of select="Name"/>
          </Name>
          <Category>
            <xsl:text>Category: </xsl:text>
            <xsl:value-of select="Category"/>
          </Category>
          <QuantityPerUnit>
            <xsl:text>Quantity: </xsl:text>
            <xsl:value-of select="QuantityPerUnit"/>
          </QuantityPerUnit>
          <UnitPrice>
            <xsl:text>Price: </xsl:text>
            <xsl:value-of select="UnitPrice"/>
          </UnitPrice>
        </Product>
      </xsl:for-each>
    </Products>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Next, you set the TransformFile attribute of the XmlDataSource control to point to the XSL file. The following shows an example of how the configured data source control would look in your markup, followed by an example of how the XmlDataSource control is bound to a TreeView control in markup.

```
<asp:XmlDataSource
  ID="XmlDataSource1"
  runat="server"
  DataFile("~/App_Data/products.xml"
  TransformFile("~/App_Data/ProductTransform.xsl" >
</asp:XmlDataSource>

<asp:TreeView
  id="TreeView1"
  runat="server"
  DataSourceID="XmlDataSource1">
  <DataBindings>
    <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="Name" TextField="#InnerText" />
    <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="Category" TextField="#InnerText" />
    <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="QuantityPerUnit" TextField="#InnerText" />
    <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="UnitPrice" TextField="#InnerText" />
  </DataBindings>
</asp:TreeView>
```

When the page is rendered, ASP.NET loads the XML file into memory. It then applies the XSL file to the XML data. Finally, the result is bound to the TreeView and embedded in the HTTP response. Figure 12-4 shows this data as it would look in a browser window. Notice that the data is sorted and the additional descriptive text has been added to several nodes.

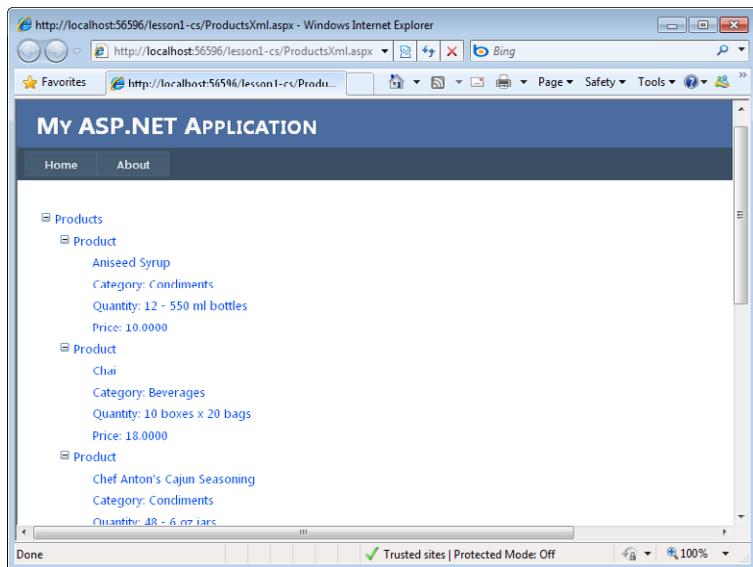


FIGURE 12-4 The transformed file displayed in a browser window.

Filtering XML with the XmlDataSource Control

The XmlDataSource control also allows you to set a data filter to define a subset of your XML. This is done via the XPath attribute. You set this attribute to a valid XPath expression that represents a filter expression. For example, to retrieve a subset of the product data in the XML file defined in the previous section, you could set the XPath attribute as in the following markup.

```
<asp:XmlDataSource  
    ID="XmlDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    DataFile="~/App_Data/products.xml"  
    TransformFile="~/App_Data/ProductTransform.xsl"  
    XPath="/Products/Product[Category='Category: Beverages']" >  
</asp:XmlDataSource>
```

In this example, the data is filtered for only those products with a category value set to "Beverages." Notice that the value is actually set to "Category: Beverages." This is because the XPath expression is applied following any XSL transformations. Recall that in the previous example, the "Category: " text was added to data. Therefore, you have to account for it in the XPath expression.

NOTE INSERTING, DELETING, MODIFYING, AND SAVING XML DATA

The XmlDataSource control is typically used to read XML data. Unlike many of the other data source controls, it does not provide automatic attributes for inserting, deleting, updating, and saving XML data. Instead, you have to write your own custom code if you require this behavior.

Connecting to LINQ-Based Data by Using LinqDataSource

You can use the LinqDataSource control to easily connect to data supplied by any data source that represents a collection of data. This includes lists, arrays, LINQ to SQL objects, and more. In this way, it is the most flexible data source control and typically requires the least amount of supporting code.

The LinqDataSource control uses the ContextTypeName attribute to define the database context of your LINQ-based data. This attribute can be set to point to the name of the class that represents your database context. As an example, suppose you have created a DBML DataContext file to represent the Northwind database by using LINQ to SQL (see Chapter 11). This file would include the NorthwindDataContext class, which represents the tables in your database. The following markup shows how you would connect to this class by using the LinqDataSource control.

```
<asp:LinqDataSource
    ID="LinqDataSource1"
    runat="server"
    ContextTypeName="NorthwindDataContext"
    EnableDelete="True"
    EnableInsert="True"
    EnableUpdate="True"
    OrderBy="CompanyName"
    TableName="Suppliers"
    Where="Country == @Country">
    <WhereParameters>
        <asp:QueryStringParameter
            DefaultValue="USA"
            Name="Country"
            QueryStringField="country"
            Type="String" />
    </WhereParameters>
</asp:LinqDataSource>
```

The LinqDataSource control is similar to other data source controls. It allows you to define parameters, indicate sorting, enable paging, and more. However, its LINQ-style declarative syntax makes it unique. Consider the preceding markup. Notice that the TableName attribute is set to Suppliers. You then use attributes to define a query that indicates both a Where clause and an OrderBy clause. The Where clause uses the WhereParameters parameter, which represents a query string that filters the data based on the value of country on the query string.

You can use LINQ language constructs in the markup of your LinqDataSource control. For example, by default, if no Select attribute is specified, the data source will return all fields in the collection. However, you can use a LINQ expression to indicate a new anonymous type. You can even create calculated fields as you would with any Select statement in a LINQ query. The following markup shows an example. Notice that the Location field is made up of three different fields from the data source.

```
<asp:LinqDataSource ID="LinqDataSource1" runat="server"
    ContextTypeName="NorthwindDataContext"
    EntityTypeName=""
    TableName="Suppliers"
    Where="Country == @Country"
    Select="new(SupplierId As Id,
        CompanyName As Name,
        Address + ' ' + City + ' ' + PostalCode As Location)">
    <WhereParameters>
        <asp:QueryStringParameter DefaultValue="USA" Name="Country"
            QueryStringField="country" Type="String" />
    </WhereParameters>
</asp:LinqDataSource>
```

You can also bind a LinqDataSource control to a data-bound control, as you would with any other data source. You can set values on the LinqDataSource to indicate whether to allow deleting, inserting, and updating of data. The data-bound control will then work with the LinqDataSource as appropriate.

Connecting to Site Navigation Data by Using SiteMapDataSource

The SiteMapDataSource control is used to connect to site navigation data for your website. The data for this control is defined in a special XML file called a web.sitemap. You can define one sitemap file in the root of your website. The file includes information about the pages in your site and their hierarchy. It also includes page names, navigational information, and a description of each page. It is meant as a central place for managing the navigational data of your site; it is used by controls such as Menu and TreeView to allow users to easily navigate your application.

As an example, suppose that the following web.sitemap file is defined at the root of your web application.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<siteMap xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/AspNet/SiteMap-File-1.0" >
    <siteMapNode url="" title="Home" description="">
        <siteMapNode url="products.aspx" title="Products" description="">
            <siteMapNode url="productDetails.aspx"
                title="Product Details" description="" />
        </siteMapNode>
        <siteMapNode url="services.aspx" title="Services" description="" />
        <siteMapNode url="locations.aspx" title="Locations" description="" />
        <siteMapNode url="about.aspx" title="About Us" description="" />
    </siteMapNode>
</siteMap>
```

You can connect to this data by using a SiteMapDataSource control. You simply add the control to your page. You cannot configure it to point to a specific file. Instead, it automatically picks up the web.sitemap file defined at the root of your web application. The following markup shows an example. You bind to this data the same way you bind to the other data source controls. The following code also demonstrates binding to a Menu control.

```
<asp:SiteMapDataSource  
    ID="SiteMapDataSource1"  
    runat="server" />  
  
<asp:Menu ID="Menu1"  
    runat="server"  
    DataSourceID="SiteMapDataSource1">  
</asp:Menu>
```

The result of this binding is shown in Figure 12-5.

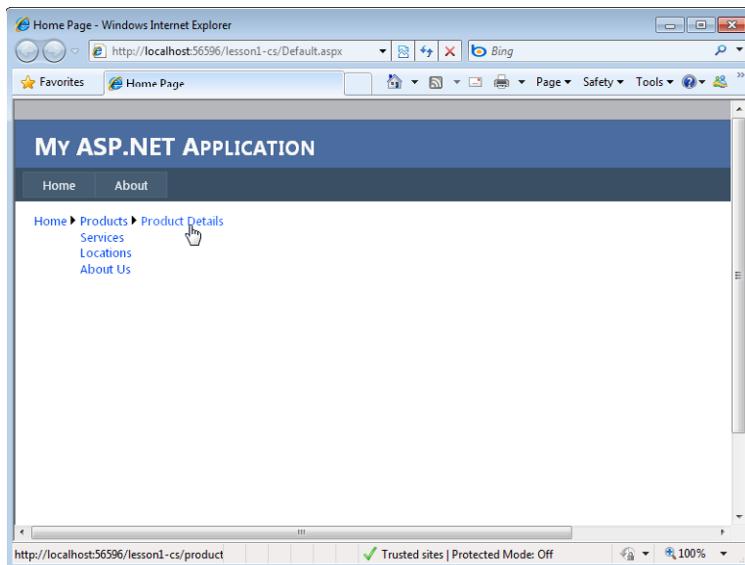


FIGURE 12-5 The site map data bound to a Menu control and displayed in a browser.

Filtering the Data Shown in the SiteMapDataSource

Sometimes, you might want to display only a portion of the data in your sitemap data file. The SiteMapDataSource control provides a couple of attributes that you can use to control the data that is provided to a visual control for display. The first, StartingNodeUrl, is used to indicate the node in the sitemap file that should be used as the root of the data source.

As an example, consider the sitemap file discussed previously. Suppose you need to display only the Products node and its subnodes. You can do so by setting the SiteMapDataSource control's StartingNodeUrl property to product.aspx, as shown in the following sample markup.

```
<asp:SiteMapDataSource  
    ID="SiteMapDataSource1"  
    runat="server"  
    StartingNodeUrl="products.aspx" />
```

You can also use the ShowStartingNode attribute to indicate whether to display the node where the SiteMapDataSource control is set to start. You set this value to false if you want to hide the starting node. This property works with the other properties of the SiteMapDataSource control, such as StartingNodeUrl.

You might find that you want your navigation controls to display navigation data based on the current active page in the browser. You can do so by setting the StartFromCurrentNode attribute to true. This evaluates the name of the current page, finds it in the sitemap, and uses it as the start node for any bound controls on that page. This setting is especially useful if you embed your navigation and SiteMapDataSource controls inside a master page.

Finally, the StartingNodeOffset attribute is used to move the starting node up or down the sitemap data tree. You set the value to a negative number to move the start node up the tree from its current evaluated position. A positive number moves it deeper into the tree hierarchy.



Quick Check

1. Which attribute of the SqlDataSource control do you use to define a connection to the database?
2. How do you define an ObjectDataSource to connect to a business object?
3. Which attribute of the LinqDataSource control do you use to indicate the O/R class used for connecting to and working with LINQ-based data?
4. Which attribute of the EntityDataSource control do you set to indicate a default entity set for your control to expose?

Quick Check Answers

1. You use the ConnectionString attribute.
2. You use the TypeName attribute.
3. You use the ContextTypeName attribute.
4. You use the EntitySetName attribute.

PRACTICE Using a Data Source Control on a Webpage

In this practice, you work with Visual Studio to create a website to work with an EntityDataSource control that exposes data from the Northwind database.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE 1 Creating the Website and Defining the Entity Model

In this exercise, you create a new website and define the Entity Model.

1. Open Visual Studio and create a new website called **DataSourceLab** by using your preferred programming language.
2. Add the northwnd.mdf file to your App_Data directory. You can copy the file from the sample files installed from this book's CD.
3. Add a new ADO.NET Entity Data Model to your website. Name this model **Northwind.edmx**. When prompted, allow Visual Studio to add the model to the App_Code directory.
4. Using the Entity Data Model Wizard, select Generate from database on the first step and click Next.
5. On the next page, select the northwnd.mdf data file. Make sure to select the check box to save the connection string in the Web.config file. Name this connection string **NorthwindEntitiesCnn** and click Next.
6. On the next page, select the Customers, Order Details, and Orders tables. Make sure that both check boxes are selected, and set the Model Namespace to **NorthwindModel**. Click Finish to complete the wizard and generate your database model.
7. Rename items in the model to better identify them. First, select the Order_Detail entity in the model, right-click it, and choose Rename. Rename the entity to **OrderDetail**. Then select the Order_Details navigation property from the Order entity and rename it to **OrderDetails**.
8. Save and close the model.

EXERCISE 2 Binding to the EntityDataSource Control

In this exercise, you create a webpage that defines an EntityDataSource that will be used to work with the entity model created in the previous exercise.

1. Continue editing the project you created in the previous exercise. Alternatively, you can open the completed Lesson 1, Exercise 1 project in the samples installed from the CD.
2. Open the Default.aspx page. Set the title over the grid (<h2>) to **Customers**, and delete the default markup content. In Design view, drag an EntityDataSource control onto the page from the Data tab of the Toolbox. This control will be used to expose a list of customers in the database.
3. Click the smart tag in the upper-right corner of the EntityDataSource control to open the EntityDataSource Tasks list. Select Configure Data Source to open the Configure Data Source Wizard.
 - a. On the first page of the wizard, from the Named Connection list, select NorthwndEntitiesCnn.
 - b. On the second page of the wizard, select the Customers EntitySetName. Set the Select fields to CustomerID, CompanyName, City, Region, Country, and Phone.
 - c. Finish the wizard, and switch to Source view for your page. Edit the EntityDataSource markup to include AutoPage and AutoSort. Also, include an OrderBy statement to order the results by CompanyName (you can do so inside markup or use the Properties window). Your markup should look similar to the following.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntitiesCnn"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntitiesCnn"
    EnableFlattening="False"
    EntitySetName="Customers"
    AutoPage="true"
    AutoSort="true"
    OrderBy="it.CompanyName"
    Select="it.[CustomerID], it.[CompanyName], it.[City], it.[Region],
    it.[Country], it.[Phone]">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

4. Add a GridView control to the page. Set the DataSourceID property to point to the EntityDataSource created previously.
5. Define bound columns and change the HeaderText for each field in the result set.
6. Enable AllowPaging and AllowSorting.
7. Add a HyperLinkField to the GridView to call orders.aspx and pass the customer ID as a query string parameter.

Your GridView markup should look as follows.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridViewCustomers" runat="server" AllowPaging="True"
    AllowSorting="True" AutoGenerateColumns="False"
    DataSourceID="EntityDataSource1">
    <Columns>
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CustomerID" HeaderText="ID"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="CustomerID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CompanyName" HeaderText="Company"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="CompanyName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="City" HeaderText="City"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="City" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Region" HeaderText="Region"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="Region" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Country" HeaderText="Country"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="Country" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Phone" HeaderText="Phone"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="Phone" />
        <asp:HyperLinkField DataNavigateUrlFields="CustomerID"
            DataNavigateUrlFormatString="orders.aspx?custId={0}"
            HeaderText="Orders" Text="view orders" />
    </Columns>
</asp:GridView>
```

- Run the page. Your page should look similar to that shown in Figure 12-6.

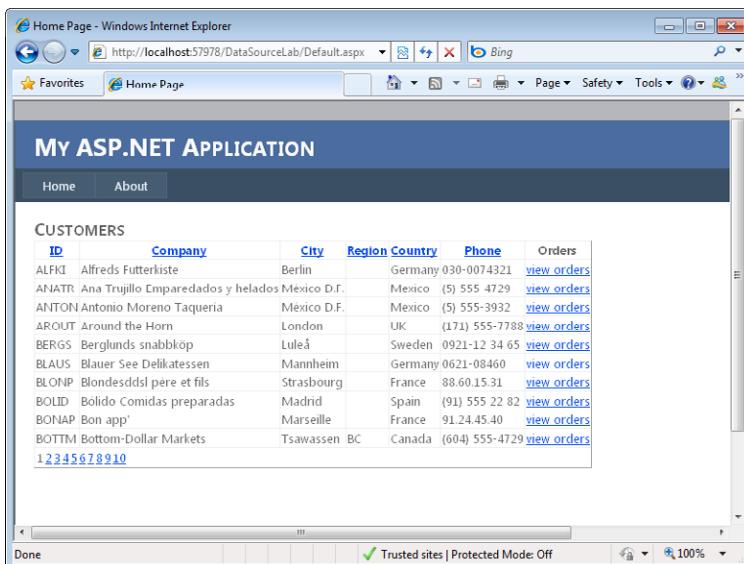


FIGURE 12-6 The EntityDataSource control bound to a GridView.

- Add an Orders.aspx page to your site.

10. Add an EntityDataSource control to the page. Set attributes to connect to the Customers entity. Define a Where clause to select a customer by a specific ID. Set the ID as a QueryStringParameter. Finally, indicate that the results should include the customer's Orders collection. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSourceCust" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=NorthwndEntitiesCnn"
    DefaultContainerName="NorthwndEntitiesCnn"
    EnableFlattening="False"
    EntitySetName="Customers"
    Where="it.CustomerID=@custId"
    Include="Orders">
    <WhereParameters>
        <asp:QueryStringParameter
            QueryStringField="custId"
            Name="custId"
            DbType="String"/>
    </WhereParameters>
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

11. Next, add a DetailsView control to the page and name it **DetailsViewCust**. In Design view, use the smart tag to set the data source to the EntityDataSource set previously. Select Refresh Schema from the same smart tag task list to generate columns bound to the data source.
12. Add a GridView control under the DetailsView and name it **GridViewOrders**. This will be used to show custom orders. You cannot, at present, bind this to the included collections of the EntityDataSource by using markup. Instead, you must write some code.
13. Add an event handler for the DetailsViewCust DataBound event. This event fires when the DetailsView control has been bound to data. You can use it to pull the bound Customer from the control and use its Orders collection for the GridView control. Your code should read as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub DetailsViewCust_DataBound( _
    ByVal sender As Object, ByVal e As System.EventArgs) _
    Handles DetailsViewCust.DataBound

    Dim cust As NorthwndModel.Customer =
        CType(DetailsViewCust.DataItem, NorthwndModel.Customer)

    Me.GridViewOrders.DataSource = cust.Orders
    Me.GridViewOrders.DataBind()

End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void DetailsViewCust_DataBound(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    NorthwndModel.Customer cust =
        (NorthwndModel.Customer)DetailsViewCust.DataItem;
    this.GridViewOrders.DataSource = cust.Orders;
    this.GridViewOrders.DataBind();
}
```

14. Run the application. Select different customers. Click the view orders link and view the results. You should see something similar to the screen shown in Figure 12-7.

The screenshot shows a Windows Internet Explorer window titled "http://localhost:57900/DataSourceLab/orders.aspx?custId=ALFKI - Windows Internet Explorer". The page is titled "My ASP.NET Application". It displays two data-bound controls: a DetailsView control for "CUSTOMER DETAILS" and a GridView control for "CUSTOMER ORDERS".

CUSTOMER DETAILS

CustomerID	ALFKI
CompanyName	Alfreds Futterkiste
ContactName	Maria Anders
ContactTitle	Sales Representative
Address	Obere Str. 57
City	Berlin
Region	
PostalCode	12209
Country	Germany
Phone	030-0074321
Fax	030-0076515

CUSTOMER ORDERS

OrderID	CustomerID	EmployeeID	OrderDate	RequiredDate	ShippedDate	ShipVia	Freight	ShipName	ShipAddress	ShipCity	ShipRegion	ShipPostalCode	ShipCountry
10643	ALFKI	6	8/25/1997 12:00:00 AM	9/22/1997 12:00:00 AM	9/2/1997 12:00:00 AM	1	29.4600	Alfred's Futterkiste	Obere Str. 57	Berlin		12209	Germany
10692	ALFKI	4	10/3/1997 12:00:00 AM	10/31/1997 12:00:00 AM	10/13/1997 12:00:00 AM	2	61.0200	Alfred's Futterkiste	Obere Str. 57	Berlin		12209	Germany
10702	ALFKI	4	10/13/1997 12:00:00 AM	11/24/1997 12:00:00 AM	10/21/1997 12:00:00 AM	1	23.9400	Alfred's Futterkiste	Obere Str. 57	Berlin		12209	Germany

FIGURE 12-7 The orders.aspx page has two controls that are bound to two different collections exposed by the same EntityDataSource control.

Lesson Summary

- ASP.NET provides several data source controls (LinqDataSource, ObjectDataSource, SqlDataSource, AccessDataSource, EntityDataSource, XmlDataSource, and SiteMapDataSource) that allow you to easily work with various types of data. These controls allow you to bind to data by using data-bound web server controls.
- You can pass parameters to most data source controls. A parameter can be bound to a value in a cookie, in the session, in a form field, in the query string, or in a similar object.
- Many of the data source controls allow you to cache data. Those that do include the ObjectDataSource, SqlDataSource, and AccessDataSource controls.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 1, "Connecting to Data with Data Source Controls." The questions are also available on the companion CD in a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You have a data context map for your SQL Server database defined inside a class file. You need to connect to this data by using a data source control. Which data source control should you use?
 - A. ObjectDataSource
 - B. SqlDataSource
 - C. SiteMapDataSource
 - D. LinqDataSource
2. You are using an ObjectDataSource control to connect to a business object. Which attributes of the control must you set to return data for the data source? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. TypeName
 - B. SelectMethod
 - C. DataSourceld
 - D. SelectParameters
3. You want to apply caching to your data source control to increase your scalability for frequently used data. You want to set the cache to expire every 60 seconds. Which attributes of your data source control should you set to do so? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. CacheTimeout
 - B. CacheDuration
 - C. EnableCaching
 - D. DisableCaching
4. You are using an EntityDataSource control on your page. You need to write a custom query that uses a parameter in the Where clause. What actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. Set the command by using the EntitySetName property.
 - B. Set the command by using the CommandText property.
 - C. Add a WhereParameters section to the EntityDataSource control markup.
 - D. Add a CommandParameters section to the EntityDataSource control markup.

Lesson 2: Working with Data-Bound Web Server Controls

Lesson 1 showed you how to connect to various data sources by using the data source controls. After it has been accessed, the data needs to be displayed to users so that they can interact with it. ASP.NET provides a large set of controls for doing so. These controls are referred to as *data-bound controls*. Data-bound controls are controls that provide web-based UI output (HTML and JavaScript) and also bind to data on the server.

This lesson presents an overview of data binding in ASP.NET. It then presents the many data-bound controls found inside ASP.NET.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Understand the basics of how data-bound controls operate.
- Use simple data-bound controls such as DropDownList, ListBox, CheckBoxList, RadioButtonList, and BulletedList.
- Use composite data-bound controls such as GridView, DetailsView, FormView, DataList, Repeater, ListView, DataPager, and Chart.
- Use hierarchical data-bound controls such as TreeView and Menu.
- Use the data visualization control, Chart.

Estimated lesson time: 60 minutes

Introducing Data-Bound Controls

The data-bound controls in ASP.NET can be classified as simple, composite, hierarchical, or visualization controls. Simple data-bound controls are the controls that inherit from ListControl. Composite data-bound controls are classes that inherit from CompositeDataBoundControl, such as GridView, DetailsView, FormView, and similar controls. Hierarchical data-bound controls are the Menu and TreeView controls. Finally, the Chart control is a data visualization control that inherits directly from DataBoundControl.

The Microsoft .NET Framework provides several base classes that are used to provide common properties and behavior for the concrete data-bound controls. These classes form the basis of many of the data-bound controls. In this way, all of the data-bound controls work in a similar manner. Figure 12-8 shows the hierarchy of the base classes used for data-bound controls in ASP.NET.

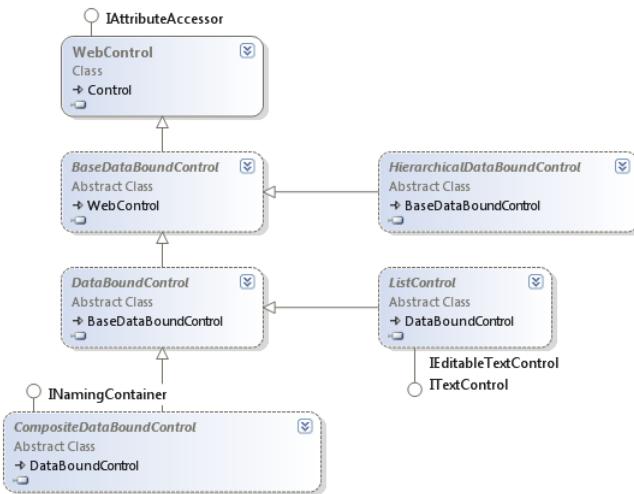


FIGURE 12-8 The base data-bound class hierarchy.

The `BaseDataBoundControl` is the first control in the hierarchy (inheriting from `WebControl`). This class contains the `DataSource` and `DataSourceID` properties used in data binding. The `DataSource` property gets or sets the object that the data-bound control uses to retrieve its data items. This property is most often used when binding to data in code, and it was the default binding property in early versions of ASP.NET. However, the `DataSourceID` property was introduced later to provide a declarative means of binding to data. You use the `DataSourceID` property to get or set the ID of a data source control that contains the source of the data, such as the data source controls discussed in Lesson 1. You typically set either the `DataSource` or the `DataSourceID` property (not both). If both properties are set, the `DataSourceID` takes precedence.

You can bind a data-bound web control to any data that implements `IEnumerable`, `IListSource`, `IDataSource`, or `IHierarchicalDatasource`. The data-bound control will automatically connect to the data source at run time by calling the `DataBind` method (which also raises the `DataBound` event). You can also call this method yourself in code to force a rebinding of data to the control.

The next control in Figure 12-8, `HierarchicalDataBoundControl`, inherits from the `BaseDataBoundControl`. It is the parent class for controls that display hierarchical data such as the `Menu` and `TreeView` controls.

The `DataBoundControl` inherits from the `BaseDataBoundControl` and is the parent class to the `CompositeDataBoundControl`, `ListControl`, and `Chart`. These classes are the parent classes to controls that display tabular data such as the `GridView` and `DropDownList` controls. The `DataBoundControl` control's `DataMember` property is a string data type that is used when the `DataSource` contains more than one tabular result set. In this scenario, the `DataMember` property is set to the name of the tabular result set that is to be displayed.

Mapping Fields to Templates

Templated binding can be used on controls that support templates. A *template control* is a control that has no default UI. The control simply provides the mechanism for binding to data. The developer supplies the UI in the form of inline templates. The template can contain declarative elements such as HTML and Dynamic Hypertext Markup Language (DHTML). The template can also contain ASP.NET data-binding syntax to insert data from the data source. Controls that support templates include GridView, DetailsView, and FormView, among others. A typical control might allow the following templates to be programmed:

- **HeaderTemplate** This is an optional header, which is rendered at the top of the control.
- **FooterTemplate** This is an optional footer, which is rendered at the bottom of the control.
- **ItemTemplate** The item template is rendered for each row in the data source.
- **AlternatingItemTemplate** This is an optional template; if it is implemented, every other row is rendered with this template.
- **SelectedItemTemplate** This is an optional template; if implemented, the template is used to render a row that has been selected.
- **SeparatorTemplate** This is an optional template that defines the markup used to indicate the separation of items from alternate items.
- **EditItemTemplate** This is an optional template that is used to render a row that is in edit mode. This usually involves displaying the data in a TextBox instead of a Label control.

Some of the upcoming examples look at defining these templates for specific controls. For the most part, this process is similar regardless of the control with which you are working.

Using the DataBinder Class

In addition to automatically binding data with data-bound controls, you sometimes will need to have more granular control over which fields get bound to which controls on your page. For this, ASP.NET provides the DataBinder class. This class can be used to define code inside your script that controls how a data source is bound.

The DataBinder class provides the static Eval method to help bind data in this manner. The Eval method uses reflection to perform a lookup of a DataItem property's underlying type by looking at the type metadata that is stored in the type's assembly. After the metadata is retrieved, the Eval method determines how to connect to the field. This makes writing data binding syntax on your page an easy task. For example, the following shows binding to the Vin property of a Car object:

```
<%# Eval("Vin") %>
```

The Eval method also provides an overloaded method that allows a format string to be assigned as part of the data binding. As an example, if you were to bind to a field called Price, you can modify the display of this field by providing currency formatting, as shown here.

```
<%# Eval("Price", "{0:C}") %>
```

The Eval method is great for one-way (or read-only) data binding. However, it does not support read-write data binding and thus cannot be used for insert and edit scenarios. The Bind method of the DataBinder class, however, can be used for two-way data binding. This makes Bind preferable when you need to edit or insert records.

Just like the Eval method, the Bind method has two overloads: one without a format and one with the format parameter. The code for the Bind method looks the same as that for the Eval method. However, the Bind method does not work with all bound controls. It only works with controls that support read, insert, update, and delete scenarios, such as GridView, DetailsView, and FormView.

Simple Data-Bound Controls

Several controls in ASP.NET provide basic, list-based data binding. These controls are not meant to work with pages of data or provide elaborate editing scenarios. Instead, they allow you to provide a list of data items with which a user can operate. Figure 12-9 shows these simple data-bound controls, including their common base class, ListControl.

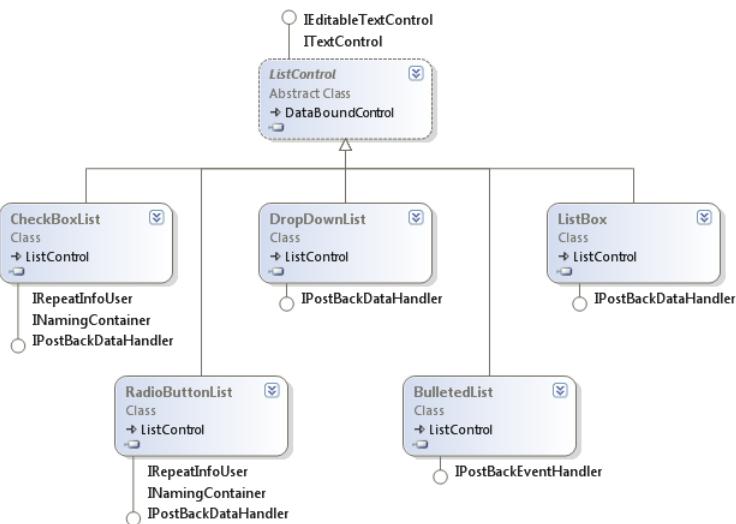


FIGURE 12-9 The ListControl class hierarchy.

The ListControl class is an abstract base class that provides common functionality for the classes that derive from it. This functionality includes an Items collection, which is a collection of ListItem data objects. Each ListItem object contains a Text property that is displayed to the user and a Value property that is posted back to the web server.

You can add items to the ListItems collection in code or declaratively in markup. You can also bind data to the controls that inherit from ListControl by setting the DataSource property (or theDataMember property if the source data has more than one table). You can also declaratively data-bind a ListControl-derived object by setting the DataSourceID property to the ID of a valid data source control on your page.

You can also choose the fields in your results that you will bind to the ListItem.Text and ListItem.Value properties. You can do so in code or through declarative markup by using the DataTextField and DataValueField properties, respectively. The text displayed for each item in the list control can also be formatted by setting the DataTextFormatString property. As an example, the following shows the declarative syntax for a ListBox bound to a SqlDataSource that provides the Northwind shipper table data.

```
<asp:ListBox  
    ID="ListBox1"  
    runat="server"  
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"  
    DataTextField="CompanyName"  
    DataValueField="ShipperID">  
</asp:ListBox>
```

The SelectedIndex property lets you get or set the index of the selected item in the ListControl. By using the SelectedItem property, you can access the selected ListItem object's properties. If you only need to access the value of the selected ListItem, use the SelectedValue property.

The ListControl also contains the property called AppendDataBoundItems, which can be set to true to keep all items that are currently in the ListControl, in addition to appending the items from the data binding. Setting this property to false clears the Items property prior to binding the data.

The ListControl also provides the SelectedIndexChanged event, which is raised when the selection in the list control changes between posts to the server. Recall that you need to set a control's AutoPostBack property to true if you intend it to post back to the server for this type of event.

The DropDownList Control

The DropDownList control is used to display a list of items to users to allow them to make a single selection. The Items collection contains the child ListItem objects that are displayed in the DropDownList control. To determine the item that the user has selected, you can retrieve the SelectedValue, SelectedItem, or SelectedIndex property.

In the following example, a DropDownList control is bound to a SqlDataSource control that returns data from the Territories database table in the Northwind database. Notice that the DataTextField and DataValueField attributes are set to fields in the database table.

```
<asp:DropDownList runat="server" Width="250px"  
    ID="DropDownList1"  
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"  
    DataTextField="TerritoryDescription"  
    DataValueField="TerritoryID" >  
</asp:DropDownList>
```

Suppose that this page also contains a button with an event that captures the selected item from the DropDownList and displays it on a label. This button control's event code might look as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Label1.Text = "You selected TerritoryID: " & DropDownList1.SelectedValue
```

Sample of C# Code

```
Label1.Text = "You selected TerritoryID: " + DropDownList1.SelectedValue;
```

When the page is run and the user makes a selection in the DropDownList control and then clicks the button, the results are displayed in the label.

The ListBox Control

The ListBox control is used to select and display items from a longer list rather than one at a time as done in the DropDownList. With the ListBox control, users can see more data at once. You can also configure the control to allow the selection of a single item or multiple items. To do so, you set the SelectionMode property. The ListBox control also has the Rows property, which is used to specify the number of items displayed on the screen. The following shows an example of a ListBox that is set to allow multiple selections and show up to 13 rows.

```
<asp:ListBox runat="server" Height="225px" Width="275px"
    ID="ListBox1"
    Rows="13"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    DataTextField="TerritoryDescription"
    DataValueField="TerritoryID"
    SelectionMode="Multiple">
</asp:ListBox>
```

The Items collection contains the collection of ListItem objects in the ListBox control. To determine which items the user has selected, you can enumerate the ListItem objects in the Items collection by examining the Selected value for each ListItem element. The following code shows an example of processing the selected items and displaying them inside a Label control.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
For Each i As ListItem In ListBox1.Items
    If i.Selected Then
        Label1.Text = Label1.Text & "You selected TerritoryID: " & i.Value & "<br />"
    End If
Next
```

Sample of C# Code

```
foreach (ListItem i in ListBox1.Items)
{
    if(i.Selected)
        Label1.Text = Label1.Text + "You selected TerritoryID: " + i.Value + "<br />";
}
```

The CheckBoxList and RadioButtonList Controls

The CheckBoxList and RadioButtonList controls are very similar. Both are used to display lists of items to users to allow them to make selections but use a check box or button to make the selection. The RadioButtonList control is used to make a single selection. The CheckBoxList control allows users to make multiple selections.

These controls contain a RepeatColumns property that is used to indicate the number of columns to be displayed horizontally. In addition, the RepeatDirection can be set to Horizontal or Vertical (the default) to indicate whether the data should be rendered across by rows or down by columns.

The following shows a CheckBoxList control configured to work with the Territory data and show data across five columns.

```
<asp:CheckBoxList runat="server"
    ID="CheckBoxList1"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    DataTextField="TerritoryDescription"
    DataValueField="TerritoryID" RepeatColumns="5">
</asp:CheckBoxList>
```

The Items collection contains the ListItem objects that are inside the CheckBoxList and the RadioButtonList controls. Use the SelectedValue property to determine the item that has been selected for the RadioButtonList. To find the selected CheckBoxList item or items, you can enumerate the ListItem objects in the Items collection by examining the value of the Selected property for each ListItem element.

The BulletedList Control

The BulletedList control displays an unordered or ordered list of items that renders as HTML or elements, respectively. The BulletedList control inherits from the ListControl control. This control renders as either bulleted or numbered, depending on the BulletStyle property.

If the control is set to render as bulleted, you can select the bullet style to Disc, Circle, or Square. Note that the BulletStyle settings are not compatible with all browsers. A custom image can also be displayed instead of the bullet.

If the BulletedList control is set to render numbered, you can set the BulletStyle to LowerAlpha, UpperAlpha, LowerRoman, and UpperRoman fields. You can also set the FirstBulletNumber property to specify the starting number for the sequence.

The DisplayMode property can be set to Text, LinkButton, or HyperLink. If set to LinkButton or HyperLink, the control performs a postback when a user clicks an item to raise the Click event.

The following example shows a data-bound BulletedList control. The control is bound to a data source control that selects the Shippers table data from the Northwind database.

```
<asp:BulletedList runat="server"
    ID="BulletedList1"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    DataTextField="CompanyName"
    DataValueField="ShipperID" BulletStyle="Circle">
</asp:BulletedList>
```

Composite Data-Bound Controls

There are several data-bound controls that use other ASP.NET controls to display bound data to the user. For this reason, these controls are referred to as *composite data-bound controls*. These controls inherit from the CompositeDataBoundControl base class. This class implements the INamingContainer interface, which means that an inheritor of this class is a naming container for child controls.

The classes that inherit from CompositeDataBoundControl directly are FormView, DetailsView, and GridView, as shown in Figure 12-10. These controls are covered in this section, along with the related ListView, DataPager, Repeater, Chart, and DataList data-bound controls.

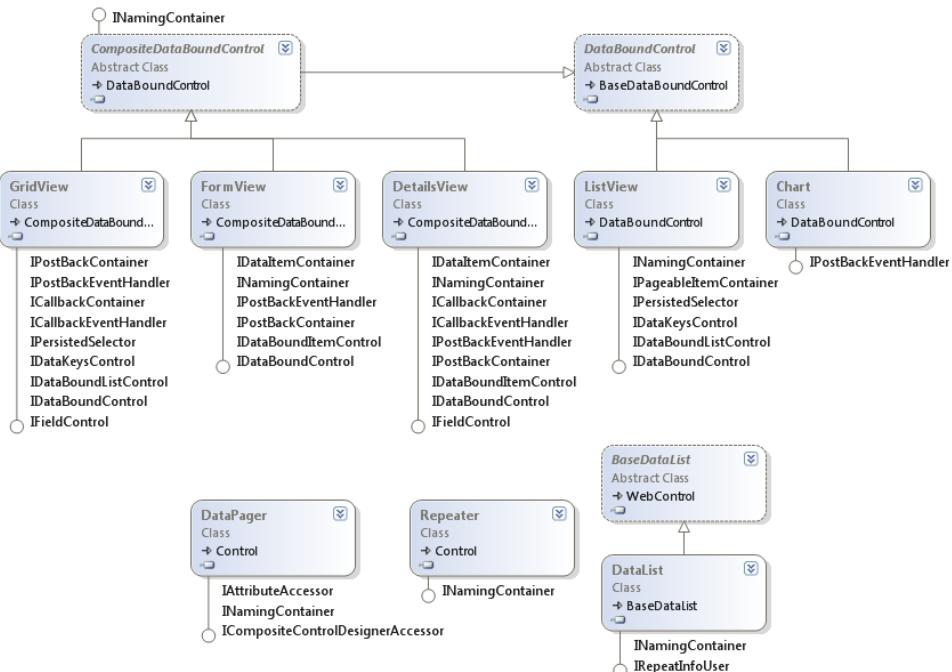
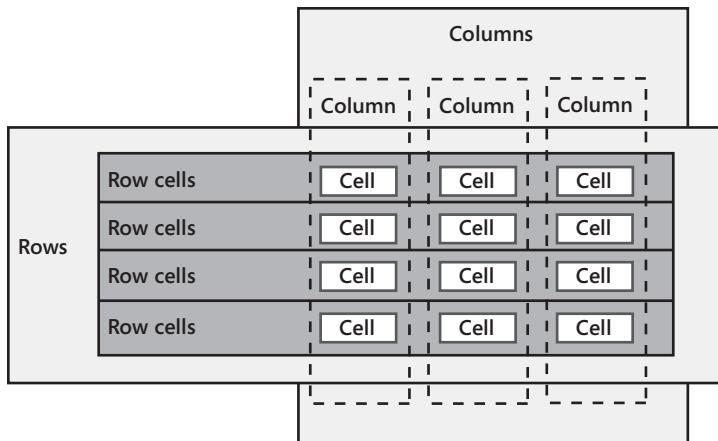


FIGURE 12-10 The CompositeDataBoundControl classes (and related controls).

The GridView Control

The GridView control is used to display data in a tabular format (rows and columns). The control renders in the browser as an HTML table. The GridView control makes it easy to configure features such as paging, sorting, and editing data without having to write much code.

The basic structure of the GridView is shown in Figure 12-11. The GridView control consists of a collection of GridViewRow (row) objects and a collection of DataControlField (column) objects. The GridViewRow object inherits from the TableRow object, which contains the Cells property. This property is a collection of DataControlFieldCell objects.



Row = GridViewRow
 Column = DataControlField
 Cell = DataControlFieldCell

FIGURE 12-11 The basic GridView control structure.

Although the GridViewRow object holds the collection of cells, each DataControlField (column) object provides the behavior to initialize cells of a specific type in the DataControlField object's InitializeCell method. The column classes that inherit from DataControlField override the InitializeCell method. The GridView control has an InitializeRow method that is responsible for creating a new GridViewRow and the row's cells by making calls to the overridden InitializeCell method when the row is being created.

The DataControlField class hierarchy is shown in Figure 12-12. The derived classes are used to create a DataControlFieldCell with the proper contents. Remember that you don't define cell types for your GridView control; you define column types and your column object supplies a cell object to the row by using the InitializeCell method. The DataControlField class hierarchy shows the different column types that are available in a GridView control.

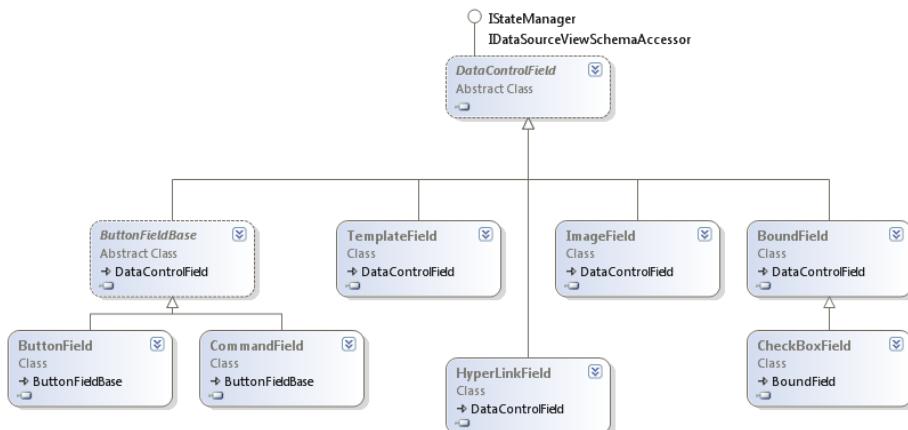


FIGURE 12-12 The DataControlField class hierarchy.

USING STYLES TO FORMAT THE GRIDVIEW CONTROL

You use styles to format the GridView. There are several styles available for you to manage, including an overall GridViewStyle and a HeaderStyle, FooterStyle, RowStyle, AlternatingRowStyle, SelectedRowStyle, EditRowStyle, and more. You can set these styles declaratively at design time. In addition, the RowCreated and RowDataBound events can also be used to control the style programmatically. In these event handlers, the Cells collection on the newly created row can be used to apply a style to a single cell in the row. The difference between the two events is that the RowCreated event takes place first, before the data is available. You can use the RowDataBound event when you need to apply a different style to a cell based on the data in the cell. These events fire after the styles are applied, which means that you can override any existing styles. Applying a different style to a cell based on the data in the cell allows you to apply business rules to determine whether a cell should stand out from other cells (such as making negative "quantity on hand" numbers red, but only when an item is shipped more than once per month).

As an example, consider a page that contains a SqlDataSource control bound to the Products table in the Northwind database. Suppose that this data source control provides SQL statements for selecting, updating, inserting, and deleting data. You can use this data source control to configure a GridView control that allows for this editing. The following markup shows an example of how the GridView would look in Source view.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    AllowPaging="True"
    AllowSorting="True"
    AutoGenerateColumns="False"
    DataKeyNames="ProductID"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
    <Columns>
        <asp:CommandField ShowDeleteButton="True" ShowEditButton="True"
            ShowSelectButton="True" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ProductID" HeaderText="ProductID"
            InsertVisible="False" ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="ProductID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ProductName" HeaderText="ProductName"
            SortExpression="ProductName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="SupplierID" HeaderText="SupplierID"
            SortExpression="SupplierID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CategoryID" HeaderText="CategoryID"
            SortExpression="CategoryID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="QuantityPerUnit" HeaderText="QuantityPerUnit"
            SortExpression="QuantityPerUnit" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitPrice" HeaderText="UnitPrice"
            SortExpression="UnitPrice" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitsInStock" HeaderText="UnitsInStock"
            SortExpression="UnitsInStock" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitsOnOrder" HeaderText="UnitsOnOrder"
            SortExpression="UnitsOnOrder" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ReorderLevel" HeaderText="ReorderLevel"
            SortExpression="ReorderLevel" />
        <asp:CheckBoxField DataField="Discontinued" HeaderText="Discontinued"
            SortExpression="Discontinued" />
    </Columns>
</asp:GridView>
```

Notice the Columns collection in the markup. Each column is defined along with the DataField and the text to be displayed as the column header (HeaderText). When this web-page is executed and displayed, each row is shown to the user along with action buttons for editing, deleting, and selecting the row. A user can click the Edit link on one of the rows to place the row into edit mode. Figure 12-13 shows an example.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer window with the URL <http://localhost:56596/lesson1-cs/Products.aspx>. The page title is "My ASP.NET APPLICATION". Below it is a navigation menu with "Home" and "About" buttons. The main content area is titled "MANAGE PRODUCT DATA" and contains a GridView control. The grid has columns for ProductID, ProductName, SupplierID, CategoryID, QuantityPerUnit, UnitPrice, UnitsInStock, and UnitsOnOrder. The first row, representing the product "Chai", is in edit mode, indicated by the "Edit" link in the first column. The rest of the rows show products like "Chang", "Aniseed Syrup", etc. At the bottom of the grid, there is a navigation bar with links labeled 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7. The status bar at the bottom of the browser window shows "Trusted sites | Protected Mode: Off" and "100%".

FIGURE 12-13 The GridView control showing a row in edit mode.

The DetailsView Control

The DetailsView control is used to display the values of one record at a time from a data source in an HTML table. The DetailsView control allows you to edit, delete, and insert records. If the AllowPaging property is set to true, the DetailsView can be used by itself to navigate the data source. However, the DetailsView can also be used in combination with other controls such as the GridView, ListBox, or DropDownList, for scenarios in which you want to display a master-detail form.

The DetailsView control does not directly support sorting, whereas the GridView control does. However, you can use the DataSource control, as discussed in Lesson 1, to manage data sorting. You should also note that the GridView does not automatically support inserting new records, whereas the DetailsView does support this feature.

The DetailsView supports the same formatting options that are available with the GridView control. You can format the DetailsView control by using the HeaderStyle, RowStyle, AlternatingRowStyle, CommandRowStyle, FooterStyle, PagerStyle, and EmptyDataRowStyle properties.

As an example, again consider a page that has a SqlDataSource control used for defining selection, insertion, updates, and deletion of product data in the Northwind database. You can configure a DetailsView to show this product data as pages and allow users to edit this data, insert new records, and delete existing ones. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:DetailsView runat="server" Width="300px"
    ID="DetailsView1"
    AllowPaging="True"
    AutoGenerateRows="False"
    DataKeyNames="ProductID"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
    <Fields>
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ProductID" HeaderText="ProductID"
            InsertVisible="False" ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="ProductID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ProductName" HeaderText="ProductName"
            SortExpression="ProductName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="SupplierID" HeaderText="SupplierID"
            SortExpression="SupplierID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CategoryID" HeaderText="CategoryID"
            SortExpression="CategoryID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="QuantityPerUnit" HeaderText="QuantityPerUnit"
            SortExpression="QuantityPerUnit" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitPrice" HeaderText="UnitPrice"
            SortExpression="UnitPrice" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitsInStock" HeaderText="UnitsInStock"
            SortExpression="UnitsInStock" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="UnitsOnOrder" HeaderText="UnitsOnOrder"
            SortExpression="UnitsOnOrder" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ReorderLevel" HeaderText="ReorderLevel"
            SortExpression="ReorderLevel" />
        <asp:CheckBoxField DataField="Discontinued" HeaderText="Discontinued"
            SortExpression="Discontinued" />
        <asp:CommandField ShowDeleteButton="True" ShowEditButton="True"
            ShowInsertButton="True" />
    </Fields>
</asp:DetailsView>
```

Notice that each column in the data table is set inside the Fields collection. The DataField attribute maps to the name of the column in the data source. The HeaderText property is used as the label that describes the data field. When the page is executed and displayed, the DetailsView shows Edit, Delete, and New buttons. When users click the Edit button, they are taken to edit mode for the selected record, as shown in Figure 12-14.

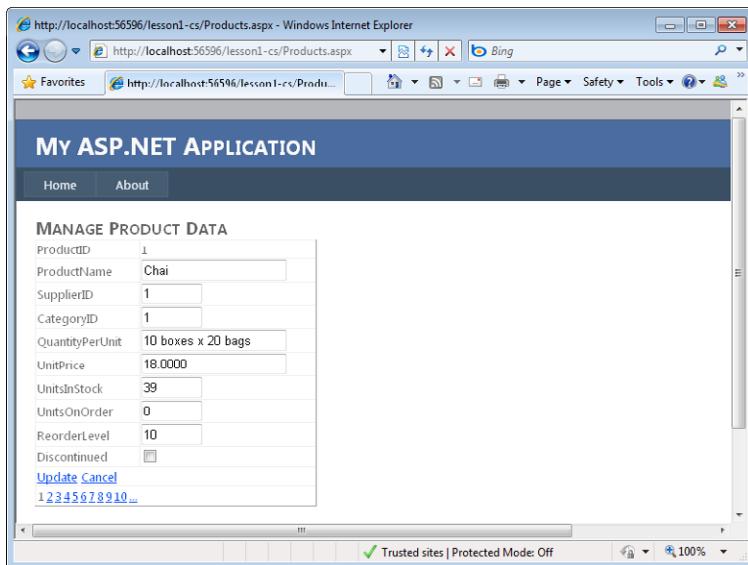


FIGURE 12-14 The DetailsView control in edit mode after the user has clicked the Edit button.

The FormView Control

Like DetailsView, the FormView control is used to display a single record from a data source. However, the FormView control does not automatically display the data in a predefined HTML table. Instead, it allows developers to create templates that define how the data should be displayed. You can define different templates for viewing, editing, and updating records. Creating your own templates gives you the greatest flexibility in controlling how data is displayed.

The FormView contains the following template definitions: ItemTemplate, EditItemTemplate, InsertItemTemplate, EmptyDataTemplate, FooterTemplate, HeaderTemplate, and PagerTemplate. You define a template by placing markup inside it and adding binding code within this markup. You then set the appropriate mode of the FormView control to switch to the specified template.

As an example, consider a page that defines a data source control for selecting the shipper data from the Northwind database. You can configure a FormView control to work with this data. For display, you can define the ItemTemplate. Here you set the controls and HTML used to lay out this data. You use the binding syntax (Eval and Bind) to connect data from the SqlDataSource to the FormView. The markup on the next page shows an example.

```

<asp:FormView runat="server"
    ID="FormView1"
    AllowPaging="True"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
    <ItemTemplate>
        Shipper Identification:
        <asp:Label runat="server" Font-Bold="True"
            ID="Label1"
            Text='<%# Eval("ShipperID") %>'>
        </asp:Label>
        <br />
        <br />
        Company Name<br />
        <asp:TextBox runat="server" Width="250px"
            ID="TextBox1"
            Text='<%# Bind("CompanyName") %>'>
        </asp:TextBox>
        <br />
        Phone Number<br />
        <asp:TextBox runat="server" Width="250px"
            ID="TextBox2"
            Text='<%# Bind("Phone") %>'>
        </asp:TextBox>
    </ItemTemplate>
</asp:FormView>

```

When you run the page, the custom template is used with the FormView to display data as defined. Figure 12-15 shows the results in a browser window.

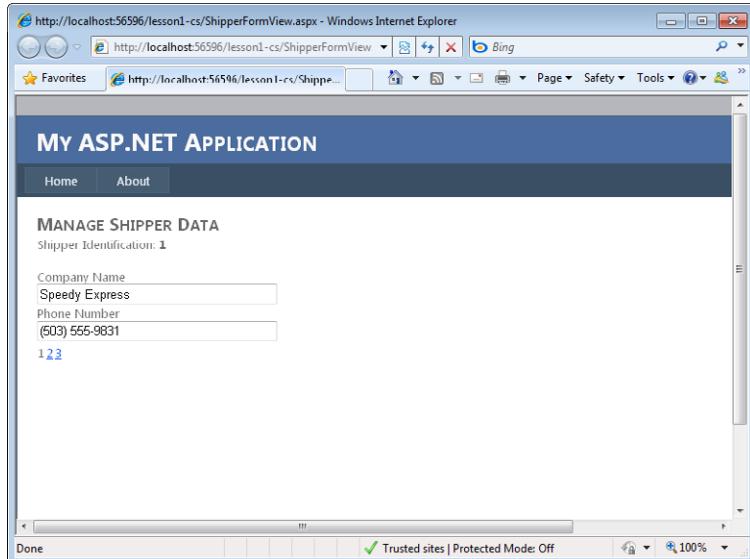


FIGURE 12-15 The FormView control showing the ItemTemplate in a browser.

The Repeater Control

The Repeater control also uses templates to define custom binding. However, it does not show data as individual records. Instead, it repeats the data rows as you specify in your template. This allows you to create a single row of data and have it repeat across your page.

The Repeater control is a read-only template. That is, it supports only the ItemTemplate. It does not implicitly support editing, insertion, and deletion. You should consider one of the other controls if you need this functionality, otherwise you will have to code this yourself for the Repeater control.

The following markup is similar to that for the FormView control example. It displays shipper data from the Northwind database as bound to a Label and two TextBox controls.

```
<asp:Repeater runat="server"
    ID="Repeater1"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
    <ItemTemplate>
        <br /><br />
        Shipper Identification:
        <asp:Label runat="server" Font-Bold="True"
            ID="Label1"
            Text='<%# Eval("ShipperID") %>'>
        </asp:Label>
        <br />
        <br />
        Company Name<br />
        <asp:TextBox runat="server" Width="250px"
            ID="TextBox1"
            Text='<%# Bind("CompanyName") %>'>
        </asp:TextBox>
        <br />
        Phone Number<br />
        <asp:TextBox runat="server" Width="250px"
            ID="TextBox2"
            Text='<%# Bind("Phone") %>'>
        </asp:TextBox>
    </ItemTemplate>
</asp:Repeater>
```

When this data is displayed, however, it is repeated down the page. Figure 12-16 shows the results in a browser window.

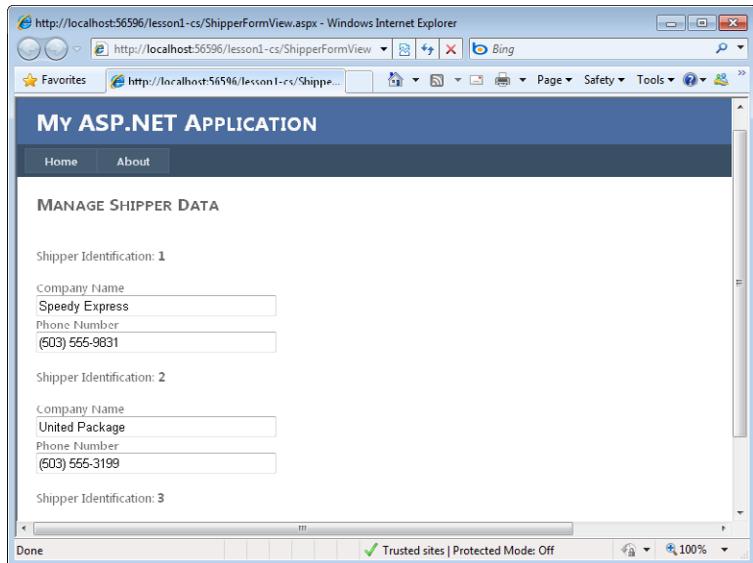


FIGURE 12-16 The Repeater control showing the ItemTemplate in a browser.

The ListView Control

The ListView control also uses templates for the display of data. However, it supports many additional templates that allow for more scenarios when working with your data. These templates include the LayoutTemplate, which allows you to indicate an overall layout inside of which rows of your data will be displayed. The rows themselves are defined with the ItemTemplate. At run time, rows are placed within the LayoutTemplate placeholder identified by a control that has its ID attribute set to itemPlaceholder.

Another template is the GroupTemplate, which allows you to define groups of data. You can then set the GroupItemCount value to indicate the number of items in a group, and you can set the control to lay out groups of data and allow users to page through them.

The ItemSeparatorTemplate allows you to define content that should be placed between rows of items. This allows you to put graphic separators or other data between rows.

The ListView control (unlike DataList and Repeater) also implicitly supports the ability to edit, insert, and delete data by using a data source control. You can define individual templates for each of these scenarios. You can then change the mode of the ListView control through a server-side call and thus invoke the template for the user.

As an example, consider a page that includes a data source control that exposes the Product table from the Northwind database. You can create a ListView control to work with this data. The following markup shows such an example. In this example, a LayoutTemplate defines a `<div>` tag that includes the itemPlaceholder setting. The ItemTemplate is then defined by a `<div>` tag. At run time, each row will be added as a `<div>` tag in the placeholder.

```
<asp:ListView runat="server"
    ID="ListView1"
    DataKeyNames="ProductID"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1">
    <LayoutTemplate>
        <div id="itemPlaceholder" runat="server"></div>
        <br />
        <div style="text-align: center">
            <asp:DataPager ID="DataPager1" runat="server" PageSize="4">
                <Fields>
                    <asp:NextPreviousPagerField
                        ButtonType="Button"
                        ShowFirstPageButton="True"
                        ShowLastPageButton="True" />
                </Fields>
            </asp:DataPager>
        </div>
    </LayoutTemplate>
    <ItemTemplate>
        <div style="text-align: center">
            <b>ProductName:</b>
            <asp:Label ID="ProductNameLabel" runat="server"
                Text='<%# Eval("ProductName") %>' />
            <br />
            <b>QuantityPerUnit:</b>
            <asp:Label ID="QuantityPerUnitLabel" runat="server"
                Text='<%# Eval("QuantityPerUnit") %>' />
            <br />
            <b>UnitPrice:</b>
            <asp:Label ID="UnitPriceLabel" runat="server"
                Text='<%# Eval("UnitPrice") %>' />
            <br />
        </div>
    </ItemTemplate>
    <ItemSeparatorTemplate>
        <hr />
    </ItemSeparatorTemplate>
</asp:ListView>
```

Notice also that the ListView control uses the ASP.NET DataPager control. This control allows you to provide custom data pagers for your data lists. Here the control is embedded at the end of the LayoutTemplate. The ListView control automatically uses the DataPager to move the user through data.

Finally, notice the use of the ItemSeparatorTemplate. This is used to put a horizontal rule between data rows. Figure 12-17 shows the results in a browser window.

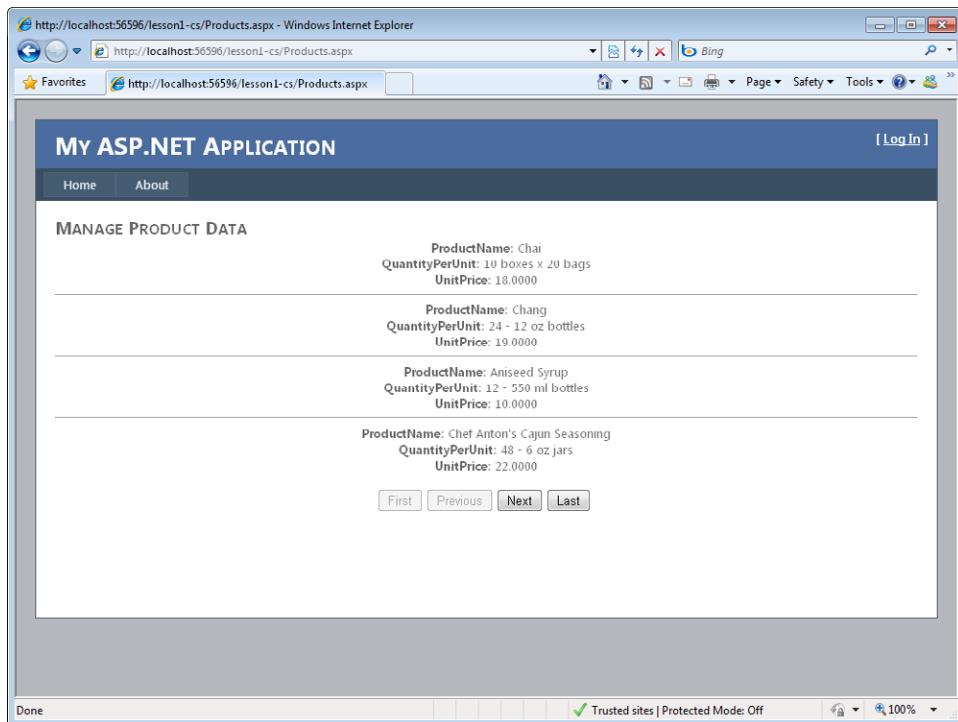


FIGURE 12-17 The ListView control rendered in the browser.

The Chart Control

The Chart control allows you to display data by using chart visualization. You bind a data source to this control much like you do for the other data-bound controls. The big difference is that you then indicate fields from the data source that should be bound to an axis or data series in a chart.

There are more than 25 different chart types for displaying data. When the chart control runs on the server, it generates a graphic file (which is a PNG file by default, but you can change this setting) and then sends this to the browser as part of the response.

There are hundreds of properties you can set to define your chart and how it displays data. The chart definition typically includes the Series and ChartAreas elements. A Series represents a group of data to be shown on a chart. A Series element has a ChartType that defines the visualization of the data (choices are Bar, Area, Bubble, Line, Column, Pie, Radar, Range, and many more). A ChartArea element is used to indicate specifics about areas on your chart, such as an x and y axis. Here you can set intervals, formatting, and related visual items.

As an example, suppose you have the following SqlDataSource control that exposes sales by region.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource ID="SqlDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:NorthwindConnectionString %>"
    SelectCommand="SELECT SUM([Order Details].UnitPrice * [Order Details].Quantity) AS
Total, Orders.ShipCountry FROM Orders INNER JOIN [Order Details] ON Orders.OrderID =
[Order Details].OrderID GROUP BY Orders.ShipCountry Order By Total"></asp:SqlDataSource>
```

You could then bind this to a Chart control to display each country and the total sales for that country. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:Chart ID="Chart1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    Width="702px" Height="581px">
    <Series>
        <asp:Series Name="Series1"
            XValueMember="ShipCountry"
            YValueMembers="Total"
            ChartType="Bar"
            XValueType="String"
            IsValueShownAsLabel="True"
            LabelBackColor="White"
            LabelFormat="{c}">
            <SmartLabelStyle CalloutBackColor="White" />
        </asp:Series>
    </Series>
    <ChartAreas>
        <asp:ChartArea Name="ChartArea1">
            <AxisY>
                <LabelStyle Format="{c}" />
            </AxisY>
            <AxisX Interval="1">
            </AxisX>
        </asp:ChartArea>
    </ChartAreas>
</asp:Chart>
```

Running this page will produce results similar to those shown in Figure 12-18.

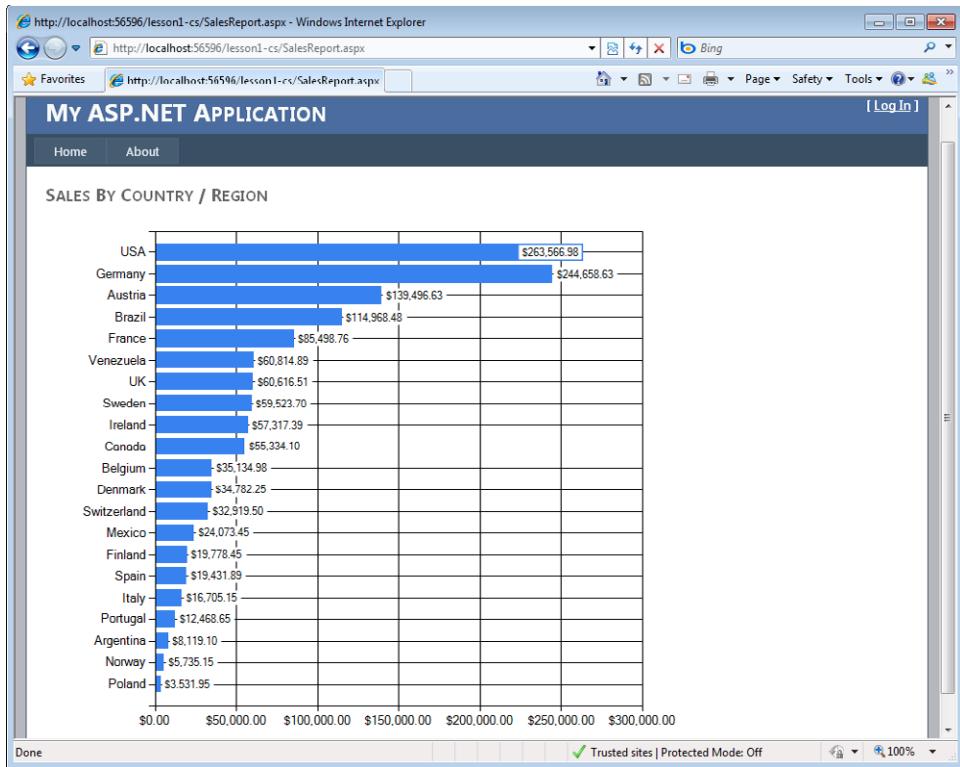


FIGURE 12-18 The Chart control rendered in the browser.

The DataList Control

The DataList control works like the Repeater control. It repeats data for each row in your data set, and it displays this data according to your defined template. However, it lays out the data defined in the template within various HTML structures. This includes options for horizontal or vertical layout, and it also allows you to set how the data should be repeated, as flow or table layout.

The DataList control does not automatically use a data source control to edit data. Instead, it provides command events in which you can write your own code for these scenarios. To enable these events, you add a Button control to one of the templates and set the button's CommandName property to the edit, delete, update, or cancel keyword. The appropriate event is then raised by the DataList control.

The following markup shows an example of a DataList control configured to show product data from the Northwind database. This control's RepeatDirection is set to show data vertically by using a RepeatLayout of flow. The product data is bound to the DataList control inside the ItemTemplate code.

```

<asp:DataList runat="server"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    RepeatDirection="Vertical"
    ID="DataList1"
    RepeatLayout="flow">
    <ItemTemplate>
        <asp:Label ID="Label1" runat="server"
            Text='<%# Eval("ProductName") %>'>
            Font-Bold="True">
        </asp:Label>
        <asp:Label ID="Label2" runat="server"
            Text='<%# Eval("UnitPrice", "{0:C}") %>'>
        </asp:Label>
        <br />
    </ItemTemplate>
</asp:DataList>

```

Hierarchical Data-Bound Controls

The `HierarchicalDataBoundControl` control serves as a base class for controls that render data in a hierarchical fashion. The classes that inherit from `HierarchicalDataBoundControl` are `TreeView` and `Menu`, as shown in Figure 12-19.

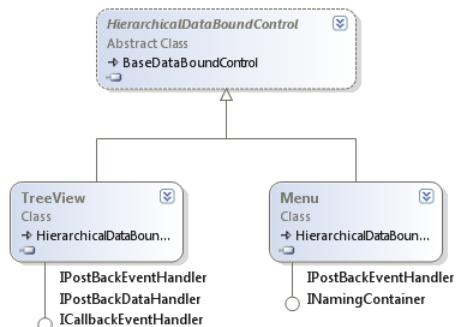


FIGURE 12-19 The `HierarchicalDataBoundControl` class hierarchy.

The TreeView Control

The `TreeView` control is a data-bound control that is used to display hierarchical data, such as a listing of files and folders, or a table of contents in a tree structure. Each entry in the tree is called a *node*. The nodes of this control can be bound to XML, tabular, or relational data. This control can also provide site navigation when used with the `SiteMapDataSource` control.

You can programmatically access and control the properties of the `TreeView` control. The `TreeView` can also be populated via client-side script by using modern browsers. In addition, nodes can be displayed as either plaintext or hyperlinks, and you can opt to display a check box next to each node.

Each node is represented by a `TreeNode` object. A node that contains other nodes is called a *parent node*. A node that is contained by another node is called a *child node*. A node can be both a parent node and a child node. A node that has no children is called a *leaf node*. A node that is not contained by any other node but is the ancestor to all the other nodes is the *root node*.

The typical `TreeView` tree structure has only one root node, but you can add multiple root nodes to the tree structure. This means that you can display a tree hierarchy without being forced to have a single root node.

The `TreeNode` has a `Text` property that is populated with the data that is to be displayed. The `TreeNode` also has a `Value` property that is used to store the data that is posted back to the web server.

You can configure a node to be a selection node or a navigation node by setting the `NavigateUrl` property. If the `NavigateUrl` property is set to an empty string (`string.Empty`), it is a selection node, and clicking the node simply selects it. If the `NavigateUrl` property is not set to an empty string, the node is a navigation node, and clicking it navigates to the location specified by the `NavigateUrl` property.

POPULATING THE TREEVIEW CONTROL

The `TreeView` control can be populated by using static data or by using data binding. To populate the `TreeView` control with static data, you can use declarative syntax by placing opening and closing `<Nodes>` tags in the `TreeView` element and then creating a structure of nested `<TreeNode>` elements within the `<Nodes>` element. Each `<TreeNode>` has properties that you can set by adding attributes to the `<TreeNode>` element.

To use data binding to populate the `TreeView` control, you can use any data source that implements the `IHierarchicalDataSource` interface, such as an `XmlDataSource` control or a `SiteMapDataSource` control. Simply set the `DataSourceID` property of the `TreeView` control to the `ID` value of the data source control, and the `TreeView` control automatically binds to the specified data source control.

You can also bind to an `XmlDocument` object or a `DataSet` object that contains `DataRelation` objects by setting the `DataSource` property of the `TreeView` control to the data source and then calling the `.DataBind` method.

The `TreeView` control contains a `DataBindings` property that is a collection of `TreeNodeBinding` objects that define the binding between a data item and the `TreeNode`. You can specify the binding criteria and the data item property to display in the node. This is useful when binding to XML elements when you are interested in binding to an attribute of the element.

Assume that you want to use a `TreeView` control to display customer data from a file called `Customers.xml`, which contains a list of customers, their orders and invoices, and the items for each order. This data is stored in a hierarchical format in the XML file. The `Customers.xml` file looks like the following.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<Customers>
    <Customer CustomerId="1" Name="Northwind Traders">
```

```

<Orders>
    <Order OrderId="1" ShipDate="06-22-2006">
        <OrderItems>
            <OrderItem OrderItemId="1" PartNumber="123"
                PartDescription="Large Widget" Quantity="5"
                Price="22.00" />
            <OrderItem OrderItemId="2" PartNumber="234"
                PartDescription="Medium Widget" Quantity="2"
                Price="12.50" />
        </OrderItems>
    </Order>
    <Order OrderId="2" ShipDate="06-25-2006">
        <OrderItems>
            <OrderItem OrderItemId="5" PartNumber="432"
                PartDescription="Small Widget" Quantity="30"
                Price="8.99" />
            <OrderItem OrderItemId="4" PartNumber="234"
                PartDescription="Medium Widget" Quantity="2"
                Price="12.50" />
        </OrderItems>
    </Order>
</Orders>
<Invoices>
    <Invoice InvoiceId="6" Amount="99.37" />
    <Invoice InvoiceId="7" Amount="147.50" />
</Invoices>
</Customer>
<Customer CustomerId="2" Name="Tailspin Toys">
    <Orders>
        <Order OrderId="8" ShipDate="07-11-2006">
            <OrderItems>
                <OrderItem OrderItemId="9" PartNumber="987"
                    PartDescription="Combo Widget" Quantity="2"
                    Price="87.25" />
                <OrderItem OrderItemId="10" PartNumber="654"
                    PartDescription="Ugly Widget" Quantity="1"
                    Price="2.00" />
            </OrderItems>
        </Order>
        <Order OrderId="11" ShipDate="08-21-2006">
            <OrderItems>
                <OrderItem OrderItemId="12" PartNumber="999"
                    PartDescription="Pretty Widget" Quantity="50"
                    Price="78.99" />
                <OrderItem OrderItemId="14" PartNumber="575"
                    PartDescription="Tiny Widget" Quantity="100"
                    Price="1.20" />
            </OrderItems>
        </Order>
    </Orders>
    <Invoices>
        <Invoice InvoiceId="26" Amount="46.58" />
        <Invoice InvoiceId="27" Amount="279.15" />
    </Invoices>
</Customer>
</Customers>

```

An XmlDataSource and a TreeView control are added to the webpage and configured. The following shows the markup for the TreeView control.

```
<asp:TreeView ID="TreeView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="XmlDataSource1"
    ShowLines="True" ExpandDepth="0">
    <DataBindings>
        <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="Customer"
            TextField="Name" ValueField="CustomerId" />
        <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="Order"
            TextField="ShipDate" ValueField="OrderId" />
        <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="OrderItem"
            TextField="PartDescription" ValueField="OrderItemId" />
        <asp:TreeNodeBinding DataMember="Invoice"
            TextField="Amount" ValueField="InvoiceId"
            FormatString="{0:C}" />
    </DataBindings>
</asp:TreeView>
```

In this example, the configuration is kept to a minimum, but configuration is required to display information that is more important than the XML element name, such as the customer's name instead of the XML element name (Customer). The following code is added to the code-behind page to simply display the value of the selected node.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Partial Class TreeView_Control
    Inherits System.Web.UI.Page

    Protected Sub TreeView1_SelectedNodeChanged(ByVal sender As Object, _
        ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles TreeView1.SelectedNodeChanged
        Response.Write("Value:" + TreeView1.SelectedNode.Value)
    End Sub

End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public partial class TreeView_Control : System.Web.UI.Page
{
    protected void TreeView1_SelectedNodeChanged(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        Response.Write("Value:" + TreeView1.SelectedNode.Value);
    }
}
```

When the webpage is displayed, the Customers node is visible. You can also click the plus (+) sign to expand the nodes, as shown in Figure 12-20.

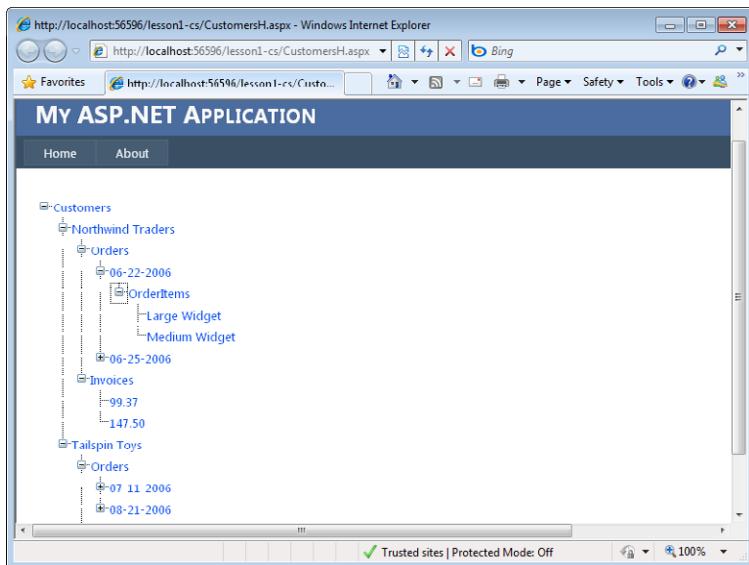


FIGURE 12-20 The TreeView displays the nodes as configured.

The Menu Control

The Menu control is a data-bound control that is used to display hierarchical data in the form of a menu system. The Menu control is often used in combination with a SiteMapDataSource control for navigating a website.

The Menu control can be populated by using static data or by using data binding. To populate the Menu control with static data, you can use declarative syntax by placing opening and closing `<Items>` tags in the `Menu` element, and then you can create a structure of nested `<MenuItem>` elements within the `<Items>` element. Each `<MenuItem>` has properties that you can set by adding attributes to the `<asp:MenuItem>` element.

To use data binding to populate the Menu control, you can use any data source that implements the `IHierarchicalDataSource` interface, such as an `XmlDataSource` control or a `SiteMapDataSource` control. Simply set the `DataSourceID` property of the `Menu` control to the ID value of the data source control, and the `Menu` control automatically binds to the specified data source control.

You can also bind to an `XmlDocument` object or a `DataSet` object that contains `DataRelation` objects by setting the `DataSource` property of the `Menu` control to the data source, and then calling the `.DataBind` method.

The Menu control contains a DataBindings property that is a collection of MenuItemBinding objects that define the binding between a data item and the menu item it is binding to in a Menu control. You can specify the binding criteria and the data item properties to display in the items. This is useful when binding to XML elements when you are interested in binding to an attribute of the element.

Assume that you want to use a Menu control to display menu data from a file called Menultems.xml, which contains a list of the menu items to be displayed. The data is stored in a hierarchical format in the XML file. The Menultems.xml file looks like the following.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<MenuItems>
    <Home display="Home" url="/" />
    <Products display="Products" url="/products/">
        <SmallWidgets display="Small Widgets"
            url="/products/smallwidgets.aspx" />
        <MediumWidgets display="Medium Widgets"
            url="/products/mediumwidgets.aspx" />
        <BigWidgets display="Big Widgets"
            url="/products/bigwidgets.aspx" />
    </Products>
    <Support display="Support" url="/Support/">
        <Downloads display="Downloads"
            url="/support/downloads.aspx" />
        <FAQs display="FAQs"
            url="/support/faqs.aspx" />
    </Support>
    <AboutUs display="About Us" url="/aboutus/">
        <Company display="Company"
            url="/aboutus/company.aspx" />
        <Locations display="Location"
            url="/aboutus/locations.aspx" />
    </AboutUs>
</MenuItems>
```

An XmlDataSource, a Menu, and a Label control are added to the webpage. The XmlDataSource is configured to use the XML file. The Menu control is configured to use the XmlDataSource. The following is the webpage markup.

```
<asp:Menu runat="server"
    ID="Menu1"
    DataSourceID="XmlDataSource1"
    OnMenuItemClick="Menu1_MenuItemClick">
</asp:Menu>
```

The following code is added to the code-behind page to simply display the ValuePath property of the selected MenuItem. When the webpage is displayed, the Menu appears and you can point to a menu item to see its child menu items.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Partial Class Menu_Control  
    Inherits System.Web.UI.Page  
  
    Protected Sub Menu1_MenuItemClick(ByVal sender As Object, _  
        ByVal e As System.Web.UI.WebControls.MenuEventArgs) _  
        Handles Menu1.MenuItemClick  
        Label1.Text = e.Item.ValuePath  
    End Sub  
End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public partial class Menu_Control : System.Web.UI.Page  
{  
    protected void Menu1_MenuItemClick(object sender, MenuEventArgs e)  
    {  
        Label1.Text = e.Item.ValuePath;  
    }  
}
```



Quick Check

1. What method should you call on a data-bound control when the data is ready to be read from the data source?
2. What method is used in a FormView to perform two-way data binding?
3. What GUI object can provide a data source that allows you to connect middle-tier objects to data-bound controls?

Quick Check Answers

1. You should call the DataBind method.
2. The Bind method is used to perform two-way data binding.
3. The ObjectDataSource control can provide a data source that allows you to connect middle-tier objects to data-bound controls.

PRACTICE Using the GridView and DetailsView Controls

In this practice, you use the GridView and DetailsView data-bound controls together to create a master-detail page.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE Creating the Website, Adding Controls to the Page, and Configuring the Controls

In this exercise, you create a new website and add the database and data source control. You then add the data-bound controls and configure them accordingly.

1. Open Visual Studio and create a new website called **UsingDataBoundControls** by using your preferred programming language.
2. Add the northwnd.mdf file to your App_Data directory. You can copy the file from the samples installed from the CD.
3. Open Default.aspx. Delete the default content on the page. Add a SqlDataSource control to the page from the Toolbox; name it **SqlDataSourceReadList**. This control will read data for display by the GridView control.
4. In Design view of the Default.aspx page, click the smart tag in the upper-right corner of the SqlDataSource control to launch the Configure Data Source Wizard.
 - a. On the first page, set the connection to the northwnd.mdf file in the App_Data directory and click Next.
 - b. When prompted, save the connection string as **ConnectionStringNorthwind**, and then click Next again.
 - c. On the Configure Select Statement page, select the Customers table from the Name list box. Select the CustomerID, CompanyName, ContactName, City, Country, and Phone fields. Click Next, and then click Finish to close the wizard.

Your SqlDataSource markup should look similar to the following.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource ID="SqlDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:ConnectionStringNorthwind %>"
    SelectCommand="SELECT [CustomerID], [CompanyName], [ContactName], [City],
    [Country], [Phone] FROM [Customers]">
</asp:SqlDataSource>
```

5. Drag a GridView control onto the Default.aspx page. Using either Design or Source view, configure the GridView control as follows:
 - Set the DataSourceld to SqlDataSourceReadList, created previously.
 - Set Enable Paging (AllowPaging property) to true.
 - Set Enable Sorting (AllowSorting property) to true.
 - Set AutoGenerateColumns to false.
 - Configure the CustomerID, CompanyName, ContactName, City, Country, and Phone fields to be displayed.
 - Add a CommandField to allow a user to select a row of data (you can do so in Design view by clicking Enable Selection).

Your markup should look similar to the following.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    AllowPaging="True" AllowSorting="True"
    AutoGenerateColumns="False"
    DataKeyNames="CustomerID"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSource1"
    width="700px">
    <Columns>
        <asp:CommandField ShowSelectButton="True" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CustomerID" HeaderText="ID"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="CustomerID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CompanyName" HeaderText="Company"
            SortExpression="CompanyName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ContactName" HeaderText="Contact"
            SortExpression="ContactName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="City" HeaderText="City"
            SortExpression="City" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Country" HeaderText="Country"
            SortExpression="Country" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Phone" HeaderText="Phone"
            SortExpression="Phone" />
    </Columns>
</asp:GridView>
```

6. If you want, select the GridView in Design view and click the AutoFormat link on the task pane (from the smart tag). Select Professional or another formatting option.
7. Run the website; you should be able to page through data, sort data, and select a row.
8. Next, add another SqlDataSource control to the Default.aspx page; name it **SqlDataSourceUpdate**. Configure this control as before, by using the Configure Data Source Wizard.
 - a. On the first page, select ConnectionStringNorthwind and click Next.
 - b. The next step is to configure the SELECT statement to pick up the CustomerID parameter from the selected row on the GridView control. On the Configure The Select Statement page, select the Customers table. This time, select each field in the table. Then click the Where button to launch the Add WHERE Clause dialog box. Set the column to CustomerID. Set the Operator to = (the equal sign). Set the Source to Control. Under Parameter Properties, set the Control ID to GridView1. Click the Add button, and then click OK to close the dialog box.
 - c. Click the Advanced button. In the Advanced Sql Generation Options dialog box, select the Generate INSERT, UPDATE, And DELETE Statements option. Click OK to close this dialog box. Click Next, and then click Finish to close the wizard.

Your SqlDataSource control's markup should look as follows.

```
<asp:SqlDataSource ID="SqlDataSourceUpdate" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="<%$ ConnectionStrings:ConnectionStringNorthwind %>"
    DeleteCommand="DELETE FROM [Customers] WHERE [CustomerID] = @CustomerID"
    InsertCommand="INSERT INTO [Customers] ([CustomerID], [CompanyName],
    [ContactName], [ContactTitle], [Address], [City], [Region], [PostalCode],
    [Country], [Phone], [Fax]) VALUES (@CustomerID, @CompanyName, @ContactName,
    @ContactTitle, @Address, @City, @Region, @PostalCode, @Country, @Phone, @Fax)"
    SelectCommand="SELECT [CustomerID], [CompanyName], [ContactName],
    [ContactTitle],
    [Address], [City], [Region], [PostalCode], [Country], [Phone], [Fax] FROM
    [Customers] WHERE ([CustomerID] = @CustomerID)"
    UpdateCommand="UPDATE [Customers] SET [CompanyName] = @CompanyName,
    [ContactName] = @ContactName, [ContactTitle] = @ContactTitle, [Address] =
    @Address,
    [City] = @City, [Region] = @Region, [PostalCode] = @PostalCode, [Country] =
    @Country, [Phone] = @Phone, [Fax] = @Fax WHERE [CustomerID] = @CustomerID">
    <DeleteParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="CustomerID" Type="String" />
    </DeleteParameters>
    <InsertParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="CustomerID" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="CompanyName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="ContactName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="ContactTitle" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Address" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="City" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Region" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="PostalCode" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Country" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Phone" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Fax" Type="String" />
    </InsertParameters>
    <SelectParameters>
        <asp:ControlParameter ControlID="GridView1" Name="CustomerID"
            PropertyName="SelectedValue" Type="String" />
    </SelectParameters>
    <UpdateParameters>
        <asp:Parameter Name="CompanyName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="ContactName" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="ContactTitle" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Address" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="City" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Region" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="PostalCode" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Country" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Phone" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="Fax" Type="String" />
        <asp:Parameter Name="CustomerID" Type="String" />
    </UpdateParameters>
</asp:SqlDataSource>
```

9. Add a DetailsView control to the page; place it under the GridView control.

10. Switch to Design view and configure the DetailsView control by using the smart tag and related task list.
11. Set the control's data source to SqlDataSourceUpdate.
12. Enable inserting and editing. (Deleting requires management of a foreign key constraint, so leave that cleared for this example.)
13. Click Edit Templates from the task list of the DetailsView control.
14. Select the EmptyData Template from the Display list in the task list.
15. In the template, type **No customer is currently selected.**
16. Add a LinkButton control to the template. Set the LinkButton control's CausesValidation property to false (from the Properties pane). Set its CommandName property to **New**, and set its Text property to **New**.
17. In the DetailsView Tasks window, click End Template Editing.

Your DetailsView markup should look as follows.

```
<asp:DetailsView ID="DetailsView1" runat="server" Height="50px" Width="125px"
    AutoGenerateRows="False" DataKeyNames="CustomerID"
    DataSourceID="SqlDataSourceUpdate">
    <EmptyDataTemplate>
        <b>No customer is currently selected<br />
        <asp:LinkButton ID="LinkButton1" runat="server"
            CausesValidation="False"
            CommandName="New">New</asp:LinkButton>
        </b>
    </EmptyDataTemplate>
    <Fields>
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CustomerID" HeaderText="ID"
            ReadOnly="True" SortExpression="CustomerID" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="CompanyName" HeaderText="Company"
            SortExpression="CompanyName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ContactName" HeaderText="Contact"
            SortExpression="ContactName" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="ContactTitle" HeaderText="Contact Title"
            SortExpression="ContactTitle" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Address" HeaderText="Address"
            SortExpression="Address" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="City" HeaderText="City"
            SortExpression="City" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Region" HeaderText="Region"
            SortExpression="Region" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="PostalCode" HeaderText="Postal Code"
            SortExpression="PostalCode" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Country" HeaderText="Country"
            SortExpression="Country" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Phone" HeaderText="Phone"
            SortExpression="Phone" />
        <asp:BoundField DataField="Fax" HeaderText="Fax"
            SortExpression="Fax" />
        <asp:CommandField ShowEditButton="True"
            ShowInsertButton="True" />
    </Fields>
</asp:DetailsView>
```

18. If you want, select the DetailsView control in Design view and click the AutoFormat link in the task pane (from the smart tag). Select Professional or another formatting option.
19. Next, add code to update the GridView when a record has been inserted or edited in the DetailsView control. To do so, add event handlers for both the ItemUpdated and ItemInserted events of the DetailsView control. Inside each event, rebind the GridView control. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub DetailsView1_ItemInserted(ByVal sender As Object, _
    ByVal e As System.Web.UI.WebControls.DetailsViewInsertedEventArgs) _
Handles DetailsView1.ItemInserted

    GridView1.DataBind()

End Sub

Protected Sub DetailsView1_ItemUpdated(ByVal sender As Object, _
    ByVal e As System.Web.UI.WebControls.DetailsViewUpdatedEventArgs) _
Handles DetailsView1.ItemUpdated

    GridView1.DataBind()

End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void DetailsView1_ItemUpdated(object sender,
    DetailsViewEventArgs e)
{
    GridView1.DataBind();
}

protected void DetailsView1_ItemInserted(object sender,
    DetailsViewEventArgs e)
{
    GridView1.DataBind();
}
```

20. Add a title to the top of the page for **Manage Customers**. Add another title for **Customer Details**.
21. Run the webpage. Notice that the empty DetailsView control allows you to add a new record. Select a row from the GridView. Notice that it appears in the DetailsView section, as shown in Figure 12-21. Click the Edit link (which will appear when a row is selected in the GridView), and then edit a record.

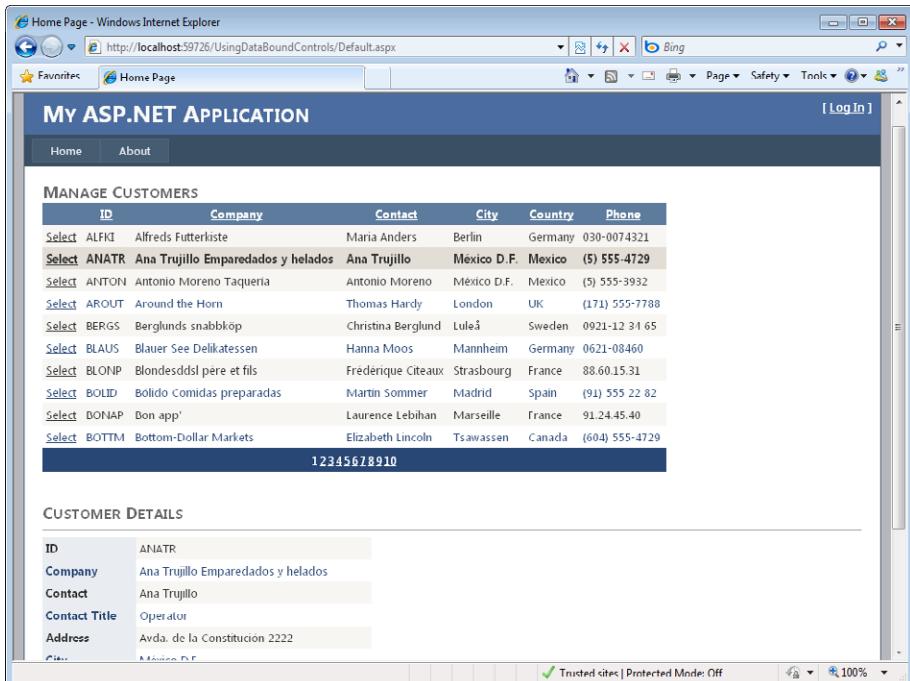


FIGURE 12-21 The master-detail form shown in the browser window.

Lesson Summary

- Simple data-bound controls consist of controls that inherit from the `ListControl`, such as `DropDownList`, `ListBox`, `CheckBoxList`, `BulletedList`, and `RadioButtonList`. For these controls, you set the `TextField` to the name of the column that contains the data you want to display to the user. You set the `ValueField` to the column that contains the value or values you want to return to the server for a selected item.
- Composite data-bound controls consist of the `GridView`, `DetailsView`, `FormView`, `Repeater`, `ListView`, and `DataList` controls. The `GridView` and `DetailsView` controls show data as tables. The other controls allow you to define templates for laying out your data.
- Hierarchical data-bound controls consist of the `Menu` and `TreeView` controls. These controls are used for displaying data that contains parent-child relationships.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 2, "Working with Data-Bound Web Server Controls." The questions are also available on the companion CD in a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You are creating a data-bound CheckBoxList control that allows a user to select options for configuring a vehicle. When the data is displayed to the user, you want the OptionName column to display. When the data is posted back to the server, you need the OptionId column value for all selected items. Which of the following attribute definitions would you set? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. DataTextField=OptionId
 - B. DataTextField=OptionName
 - C. DataValueField=OptionId
 - D. DataValueField=OptionName
2. You want to display a list of suppliers on a webpage. The supplier list must display 10 suppliers at a time, and you require the ability to edit individual suppliers. Which web control is the best choice for this scenario? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. The DetailsView control
 - B. The Repeater control
 - C. The GridView control
 - D. The ListView control
3. You want to display a list of parts in a master-detail scenario so that users can select a part number from a list that takes a minimum amount of space on the webpage. When the part is selected, a DetailsView control displays all the information about the part and allows users to edit the part. Which web control is the best choice to display the part number list for this scenario?
 - A. The DropDownList control
 - B. The RadioButtonList control
 - C. The FormView control
 - D. The TextBox control

Lesson 3: Working with ASP.NET Dynamic Data

ASP.NET Dynamic Data is a set of user interface templates and controls for creating data-driven websites. You attach a data context to a Dynamic Data MetaModel object and can then work with that data to read, filter, insert, update, and delete. Dynamic Data does not generate code specific to a particular data schema. Rather, it is a series of extensible templates that can work with any LINQ to SQL, Entity Framework, or custom data context. If you need to customize a template to change the way data is displayed or behaves, you can do so by following the conventions of ASP.NET Dynamic Data.

This lesson helps you get started with using ASP.NET Dynamic Data to either create a new website or add these capabilities to an existing one. The lesson covers creating the scaffolding for using Dynamic Data and customizing the technology, including creating custom routes, fields, pages, and business logic.

After this lesson, you will be able to:

- Create the scaffolding for using Dynamic Data against a data context.
- Create custom routing, field templates, page templates, and business logic.
- Add Dynamic Data scaffolding and/or features to an existing website.

Estimated lesson time: 40 minutes



REAL WORLD

Mike Snell

I have personally written a number of custom web store fronts using ASP and ASP.NET. In each case, most of the work actually involved creating screens to allow administrators to manage the data in the site. This meant adding and editing products, orders, customer information, sales, and more. Dynamic Data would have cut what was weeks (often months) of work down to days.

Getting Started with Dynamic Data Websites

ASP.NET Dynamic Data works at run time to extract information from your data context and apply that information to template pages for handling CRUD operations against your data source. Recall that a data context is created by using LINQ to SQL or LINQ to Entities (see Chapter 11 for more details).

Dynamic Data uses the information from your model, such as table relationships and field data types, to create meaningful pages. For example, if you are showing data in a list, Dynamic Data will use foreign-key relationships to allow you to filter that data (into product categories, for example). It will also allow you to link to related data from a specified data record (such as customer orders). In addition, fields will be shown based on their underlying data type, and when users update or insert data, validation rules will be enforced based on the model.

To start creating a new website with Dynamic Data, you typically follow these steps:

1. Create a scaffold site that includes the default presentation layer templates used by ASP.NET Dynamic Data.
2. Define a data context that represents your data source and model by using either LINQ to SQL, LINQ to Entities, or a custom model.
3. Register your data context with the website's MetaModel instance inside the Global.asax file.
4. Customize the URL routing, page and field templates, business logic, and validation in the website. (This step is optional.)

You will walk through each of these steps in the upcoming sections.

Creating a Dynamic Data Website

You can create a new ASP.NET Dynamic Data website or add Dynamic Data features to an existing site. This section covers the former; you will see how to add these features to existing sites later in the lesson.

Visual Studio ships with two ASP.NET Dynamic Data project templates: ASP.NET Dynamic Data Entities Web Site and ASP.NET Dynamic Data LINQ to SQL Web Site. The first is used to create sites that use the Entity Framework as the data context; the second is for sites that connect to a LINQ to SQL data context. You must choose between the two, because the templates only support a single data context in a site (as it is defined within the application's Global.asax file).

Figure 12-22 shows the structure of a newly created Dynamic Data website. Note that you do not select a data source when you create the website. Instead, you can connect to a data source as a later step. The website only contains templates that use your data context information at run time. The next section covers this website structure in detail.

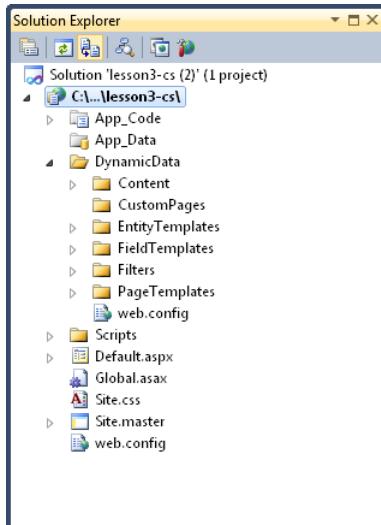


FIGURE 12-22 The structure of an ASP.NET Dynamic Data website.

DYNAMIC DATA WEBSITE STRUCTURE

The Dynamic Data website contains the DynamicData folder and several files in the root of the site. You will look at the contents of the DynamicData folder soon. First, the files in the root of the site are listed here, along with a brief description of each:

- **Default.aspx** This file is used to display all tables in the data context. It includes a GridView control that is bound to the MetaModel.VisibleTables collection. The MetaModel is exposed through an application variable (from the Global.asax file) called DefaultModel. It is referenced as follows:
`ASP.global_asax.DefaultModel.VisibleTables.`
- **Global.asax** This file contains code that is run for application events, including Application_Start. Dynamic Data uses this file to call RegisterRoutes at Application_Start. This method connects your data context to a meta-model and uses ASP.NET routing to handle page requests for tables and actions (such as List, Details, Edit, and Insert).
- **Site.css** This file represents a style sheet used by the master page and related page templates. You can customize this style sheet to change the look of your Dynamic Data site.
- **Site.master** This is the master page for the Dynamic Data site. By default, it defines navigation for the site, a ScriptManager control, and the main ContentPlaceHolder control. The Site.master page is used by the page templates.
- **Web.config** This is a less verbose version of the Web.config file that is created for standard ASP.NET websites.

The DynamicData folder contains several subfolders and another Web.config file. The Web.config file registers an HTTP handler for System.Web.HttpNotFoundHandler. The folders and their naming convention define a pattern that is used by Dynamic Data to route requests accordingly. Each folder is listed here, along with a brief description of its contents:

- **Content** This folder contains content used by Dynamic Data, including images for the pager control and a custom GridViewPager user control.
- **CustomPages** By default, this folder is empty. You use this folder if you need to create custom templates for displaying or editing data. The convention is to create a new folder under CustomPages with the name of the item in your data model that you want to customize (such as Customers). You then typically copy a page template (from the PageTemplates directory) to this new folder, customize it, and save it. The Dynamic Data routing will look in this CustomPages folder first for items that are named with this convention (and thus use those instead of the default templates).
- **EntityTemplates** This folder contains user controls that are used by the page templates for displaying and editing data. These user controls include Default.aspx, Default_Edit.aspx, and Default_Insert.aspx.
- **FieldTemplates** This folder contains a set of user controls (ASCX files) that define the UI for displaying table fields in either a view or edit mode. There are user controls based on the type of data being worked with, including Boolean, DateTime, Text, Url, Decimal, Email, and more. These fields are rendered based on the data type in the data context or on additional attributes that you add to extend the meta-model. You can also create custom field templates to display or edit data with other controls (including third-party controls).
- **Filters** This folder contains user controls to define the UI that is used to filter data that is displayed in a list. These controls include Boolean.aspx, Enumeration.aspx, and ForeignKey.aspx.
- **PageTemplates** This folder contains the default templates for working with data. These template pages can show a table in a list (List.aspx), allow you to create a new record (Insert.aspx), edit an existing record (Edit.aspx), view the details of a record (Details.aspx), and show a list of data and a selected record's details on the same page (ListDetails.aspx).

Defining a Data Context

You create a data context by adding either a LINQ to SQL Classes (DBML) file or an ADO.NET Entity Data Model (EDMX) file to your project (see Chapter 11 for more details). You can also create a custom model through code.

As an example, suppose that the Northwind database is in the App_Data directory of your site. You can then create a LINQ to SQL DBML file based on tables found inside this database. Figure 12-23 shows an example.

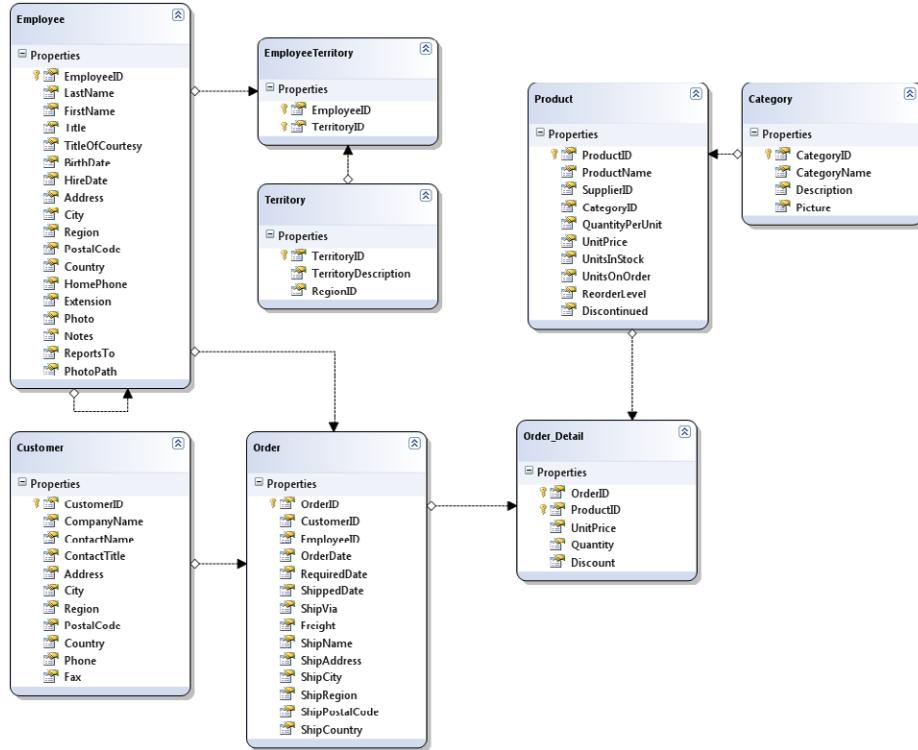


FIGURE 12-23 An example LINQ to SQL DBML model.

Registering Your Data Context with the MetaModel

The next step is to register your data context with `System.Web.DynamicData.MetaModel`. The `MetaModel` defines the connectivity or mapping between the scaffold templates and your data layer.

You register your data context inside the `Global.asax` file. Here you will notice that, at the top of the file, the `MetaModel` is actually defined as a private application variable and exposed as a read-only property. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```

Private Shared s_defaultModel As New MetaModel
Public Shared ReadOnly Property DefaultModel() As MetaModel
    Get
        Return s_defaultModel
    End Get
End Property

```

Sample of C# Code

```
private static MetaModel s_defaultModel = new MetaModel();
public static MetaModel DefaultModel {
    get {
        return s_defaultModel;
    }
}
```

Further down in the file, notice that the RegisterRoutes method is called at application start. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Private Sub Application_Start(ByVal sender As Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)
    RegisterRoutes(RouteTable.Routes)
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
void Application_Start(object sender, EventArgs e) {
    RegisterRoutes(RouteTable.Routes);
}
```

The RegisterRoutes method is used to connect your data source to the MetaModel. You do so through the DefaultModel.RegisterContext method and pass the type name of your data context. You might also want to set the ScaffoldAllTables property to true to make sure that the site will return all tables in the data context by default. The following code shows an example of registering the NorthwindDataContext LINQ to SQL object with the MetaModel.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Public Shared Sub RegisterRoutes(ByVal routes As RouteCollection)

    DefaultModel.RegisterContext( _
        GetType(NorthwindDataContext), New ContextConfiguration() _
        With {.ScaffoldAllTables = True})

    routes.Add(New DynamicDataRoute("{table}/{action}.aspx") With {
        .Constraints = New RouteValueDictionary(New _
            With {.Action = "List|Details|Edit|Insert"}),
        .Model = DefaultModel})
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
public static void RegisterRoutes(RouteCollection routes) {

    DefaultModel.RegisterContext(typeof(NorthwindDataContext),
        new ContextConfiguration() { ScaffoldAllTables = true });

    routes.Add(new DynamicDataRoute("{table}/{action}.aspx") {
        Constraints = new RouteValueDictionary(
            new { action = "List|Details|Edit|Insert" }),
        Model = DefaultModel
    });
}
```

That is all that is required to create a basic Dynamic Data website. You can now run the site and view, edit, insert, and delete data by using the template user interface. Figure 12-24 shows an example of the Products table in a web browser. Notice the URL, Products/List.aspx. This table/action convention is defined in the routing. It simply indicates that the List.aspx template page should be called and the Product data should be displayed from the model.

	ProductName	SupplierID	QuantityPerUnit	UnitPrice	UnitsInStock	UnitsOnOrder	ReorderLevel	Discontinued	Order_Details	Category	
Edit	Delete	Details	Chai	1	10 boxes x 20 bags	30.0000	39	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Beverages
Edit	Delete	Details	Cheng	1	24 - 12 oz bottles	19.0000	17	40	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Reverases
Edit	Delete	Details	Aniseed Syrup	1	12 - 500 ml bottles	10.0000	10	70	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Condiments
Edit	Delete	Details	Chef Anton's Cajun...	2	48 - 6 oz jars	22.0000	53	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Condiments
Edit	Delete	Details	Chef Anton's Gumbo...	2	36 boxes	21.3500	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	View Order Details	Condiments
Edit	Delete	Details	Grandma's Boysenbe...	3	12 - 8 oz jars	25.0000	120	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Condiments
Edit	Delete	Details	Uncle Bob's Organ...	3	12 - 1 lb pkgs.	30.0000	15	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Produce
Edit	Delete	Details	Northeastern Cranberry S...	3	12 - 12 oz jars	40.0000	6	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Condiments
Edit	Delete	Details	Mishi Kohn Nku	4	18 - 500 g pkgs.	97.0000	29	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Meat/Poultry
Edit	Delete	Details	Iceland	4	12 - 200 ml jars	31.0000	31	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	View Order_Details	Seafood

FIGURE 12-24 An example LINQ to SQL DBML model.

Notice also the default filters created for this list. The Discontinued filter is based on a Boolean field in the data. The Category filter is based on the relationship between Product and Category. In fact, relational IDs won't be displayed in the table, but related data will be. You can see that this was possible for the Category, because it exposed the CategoryName field. However, this was not possible for SupplierID because this table does not include a SupplierName field.

You can also see that the form allows you to page the data; select how many rows to show in a page; edit, delete, and view the details of an item; insert a new item; and connect to data related to a particular row (View Order_Details). Figure 12-25 shows an example of inserting a product. Notice that here you again get the Category drop-down list. You can also see that default data validation is being used. The validation is based on stored data types.

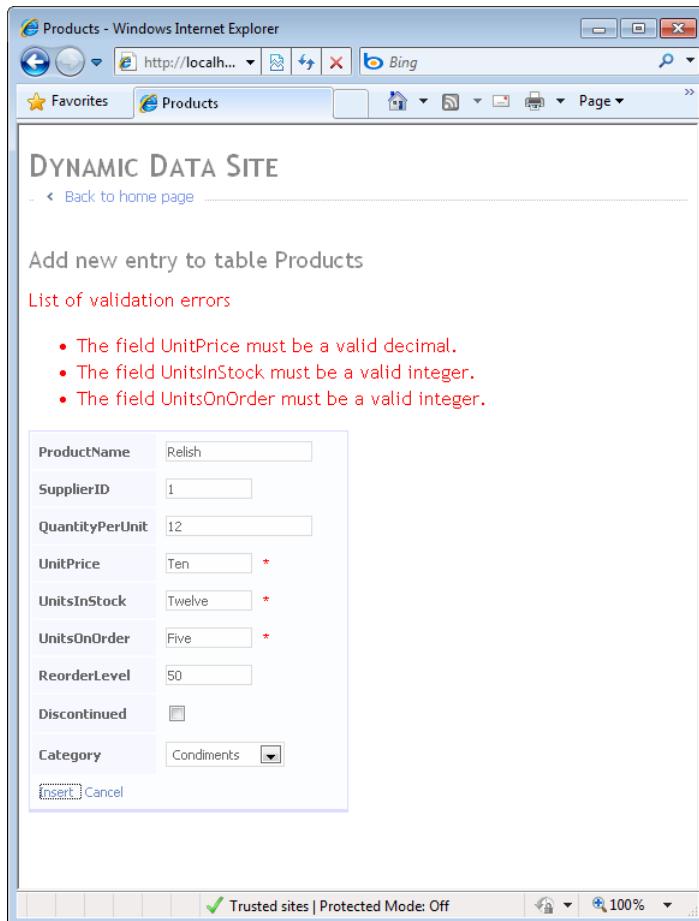


FIGURE 12-25 Automatic data validation in insert mode.

This site behavior is the default behavior with the template scaffolding. You can see that there was no code or customization done to this site. In upcoming sections, you will see how to customize the routing, create new page and field templates, and add custom business logic to validate data.

The Dynamic Data Classes

ASP.NET Dynamic Data relies on several classes inside the `System.Web.DynamicData` namespace. These classes include controls for defining custom field user controls, managing the routing, and using Dynamic Data inside a webpage. The `MetaModel` classes are found in the `System.Data.Linq.Mapping` namespace. Figure 12-26 shows some of the key classes used by Dynamic Data. Many of these classes will be discussed in upcoming sections.

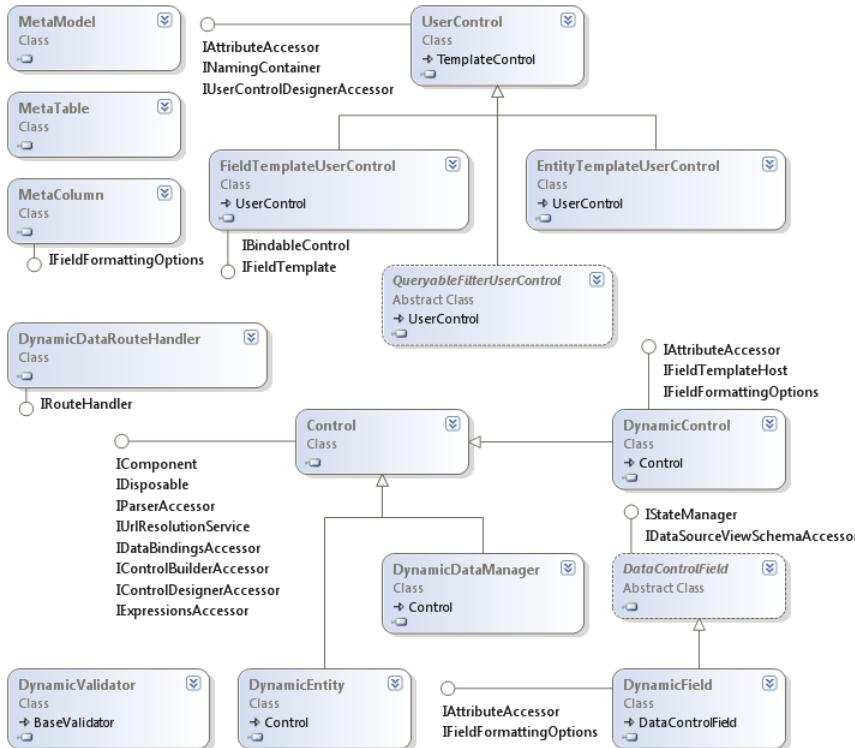


FIGURE 12-26 Some of the key classes related to ASP.NET Dynamic Data.

Extending and Customizing Dynamic Data

ASP.NET Dynamic Data is fully extensible. You can customize how fields are edited, how data is displayed, the look of the pages, the URL routing, data validation, and more. You can create customizations to existing templates that will be applied to all data elements. You can also create new, entity-specific templates for customizations that are specific to a particular entity. This section walks you through common customizations you might want to make when using ASP.NET Dynamic Data.

Defining Custom Routing

Dynamic Data uses the same routing features from `System.Web.Routing` that are used by ASP.NET model-view-controller (MVC) (see Chapter 14, “Creating Websites with ASP.NET MVC 2”). This routing engine maps intelligent Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs) that are defined based on user actions to actual pages in your site, which makes the URIs easier to understand for users and search engines.

For example, Dynamic Data exposes the List.aspx, Edit.aspx, Insert.aspx, and Details.aspx page templates for working with data. These pages are called by the routing engine based on the user's action: List, Edit, Details, or Insert. A DynamicDataRoute class is created and added to the RouteTable.Routes collection inside the Global.asax file. This DynamicDataRoute indicates that a URI should be mapped as *table/action.aspx*. The following shows the code from the Global.asax file that does this.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
routes.Add(New DynamicDataRoute("{table}/{action}.aspx") With {
    .Constraints = New RouteValueDictionary( _
    New With {.Action = "List|Details|Edit|Insert"}, .Model = DefaultModel})
```

Sample of C# Code

```
routes.Add(new DynamicDataRoute("{table}/{action}.aspx") {
    Constraints = new RouteValueDictionary(
        new { action = "List|Details|Edit|Insert" }), Model = DefaultModel)
```

This code ensures that a call to `http://mysite/products/Edit.aspx?ProductID=1` will be routed to the /DynamicData/PageTemplates/Edit.aspx page. When accessed, the page will know the right table to edit (Products) and right record to edit (ProductID=1).

EDITING THE URI STRUCTURE

You can customize this routing by editing this code. For example, you might want to change the structure of the URL or even add a custom action. You can switch the table and action in the route definition to read `{action}/{table}.aspx` and get the same results but a different URL. New requests will be made as `http://mysite/Edit/Products.aspx?ProductID=1`. In this case, the table is used for the ASPX page name, and the action precedes the table name.

EDITING THE ROUTE TABLE TO SHOW A LIST AND DETAILS ON THE SAME PAGE

The Dynamic Data page templates include the ListDetails.aspx file. This page supports viewing a table in a list and selecting an item from the list to view its details. You can also edit the item or delete it, and you can insert a new item into the list by using this page. However, by default, requests are not routed to this page. You can change this behavior by removing the existing routing and adding entries for the action's List and Details that both point to the ListDetails.aspx page. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
routes.Add(New DynamicDataRoute("{table}/ListDetails.aspx") With {
    .Action = PageAction.List,
    .ViewName = "ListDetails",
    .Model = DefaultModel})

routes.Add(New DynamicDataRoute("{table}/ListDetails.aspx") With {
    .Action = PageAction.Details,
    .ViewName = "ListDetails",
    .Model = DefaultModel})
```

Sample of C# Code

```
routes.Add(new DynamicDataRoute("{table}/ListDetails.aspx")
{
    Action = PageAction.List,
    ViewName = "ListDetails",
    Model = DefaultModel
});

routes.Add(new DynamicDataRoute("{table}/ListDetails.aspx")
{
    Action = PageAction.Details,
    ViewName = "ListDetails",
    Model = DefaultModel
});
```

The result is that all calls to view a record's details or show a table in a list will be routed to the ListDetails.aspx page. From there, users can do everything they need to with the data. Note that ListDetails.aspx also handles inline editing in the GridView control.

CREATING A CUSTOM ROUTE TO A SPECIFIC PAGE

ASP.NET Dynamic Data can already route to custom pages you create. You simply need to follow the conventions already set up. You do not need to add custom routes. Instead, you create a new folder in the CustomPages folder and name this new folder with the name of an entity from your model. You then place appropriate action pages inside this folder (List.aspx, Edit.aspx, Insert.aspx, and so on). The default routing will look for pages in CustomPage first. You will walk through an example of creating a custom template page in an upcoming section.

Adding Metadata to Your Data Context

The classes in your data context are partial classes that include partial methods. This allows you to add to these classes and their methods outside the generated code. Doing so ensures that your changes are not overwritten if the model's code gets regenerated when the database changes.

You create partial classes so that you can add metadata that defines how your fields are to be displayed and validated (see “Creating Custom Field Templates,” later in this lesson). You can also add custom business logic inside a partial method (see “Adding Custom Validation,” also later in this lesson).

To start, you simply add a class to the App_Code directory and give it the same name as the class in your data context. Of course, you mark this class as partial. You then create a related metadata class (typically added to the same file). You can name this class by using the *EntityMetadata* convention.

Inside this metadata class, you redefine the properties contained in your data context class (but as simple object types, because the underlying type already has strongly typed properties). You then mark your partial class with the *MetadataType* attribute from the *System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations* namespace. This attribute should pass the metadata class type as a parameter.

You can then add attributes to your metadata class to change how your fields are rendered by Dynamic Data. As an example, if you want to exclude a field from display, you can add the ScaffoldColumn attribute and pass in false. Additionally, if you want to format a value for display, you can use the DisplayFormat attribute. This attribute allows you to indicate whether to only format the value when it is displayed or also when it is being edited. You can also use the Display attribute to change the name of a column.

The following shows an example from the Products entity partial class and metadata class. Notice the use of ScaffoldColumn, Display, and DisplayFormat.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Imports Microsoft.VisualBasic
Imports System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations

<MetadataType(GetType(ProductMetadata))> _
Partial Public Class Product

End Class

Public Class ProductMetadata

    Public Property ProductID As Object
    Public Property ProductName As Object
    Public Property SupplierID As Object
    Public Property CategoryID As Object

    <ScaffoldColumn(False)> _
    Public Property QuantityPerUnit As Object

    <DisplayFormat(ApplyFormatInEditMode:=False,
        DataFormatString:="{0:c}")> _
    <Display(Name:="Price")> _
    Public Property UnitPrice As Object

    <ScaffoldColumn(False)> _
    Public Property UnitsInStock As Object

    <ScaffoldColumn(False)> _
    Public Property UnitsOnOrder As Object

    <ScaffoldColumn(False)> _
    Public Property ReorderLevel As Object

    Public Property Discontinued As Object

End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Web;
using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

[MetadataType(typeof(ProductMetadata))]
public partial class Product
{
}

public class ProductMetadata
{
    public object ProductID { get; set; }
    public object ProductName { get; set; }
    public object SupplierID { get; set; }
    public object CategoryID { get; set; }

    [ScaffoldColumn(false)]
    public object QuantityPerUnit { get; set; }

    [DisplayFormat(ApplyFormatInEditMode=false,
        DataFormatString="{0:c}")]
    [Display(Name = "Price")]
    public object UnitPrice { get; set; }

    [ScaffoldColumn(false)]
    public object UnitsInStock { get; set; }

    [ScaffoldColumn(false)]
    public object UnitsOnOrder { get; set; }

    [ScaffoldColumn(false)]
    public object ReorderLevel { get; set; }

    public object Discontinued { get; set; }
}
```

When you run the application, this metadata is added to the Product class. Dynamic Data then picks up on this metadata and displays your fields accordingly. Figure 12-27 shows the results in a browser. Notice the missing fields, formatted UnitPrice column, and changed name.

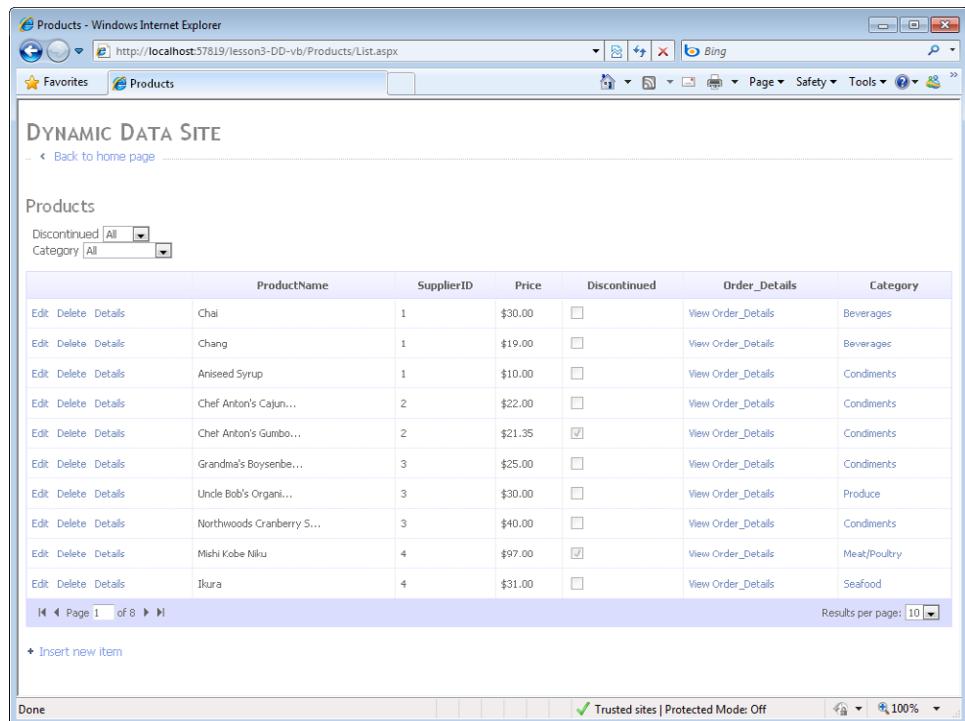


FIGURE 12-27 Using metadata and partial classes to indicate field display options.

There are many additional annotations you can add to your metadata from the System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations namespace. You will see some of these in the upcoming sections. Table 12-1 provides a partial list of these classes (note that all are attribute classes).

TABLE 12-1 Commonly Used Metadata Annotation Classes

CLASS	DESCRIPTION
Association	Used to mark a property as a data relationship, such as a foreign key.
CustomValidation	Used to indicate a custom validation method to use for validating a property.
DataType	Used to indicate the data type to associate with the field.
Display	Allows you to indicate many things about the display of a field, including its order and its name.
DisplayFormat	Allows you to change how the data in a field is displayed. You can apply the formatting to affect only the view mode (and not the edit mode) if you want.
Editable	Used to indicate whether a property can be edited.
EnumDataType	Allows you to set an enum data type for a property.

CLASS	DESCRIPTION
Key	Allows you to set one or more properties as unique keys for a collection of objects.
MetadataType	Used to set the metadata class to associate with a type from your data context.
Range	Allows you to add a numeric range constraint to a property. You can also set an error message to be shown if the range is not valid.
RegularExpression	Used to add a regular expression constraint to a property.
Required	Used to indicate that a property is required when inserting or editing.
ScaffoldColumn	Indicates whether the column should be part of the scaffold (shown).
ScaffoldTable	Indicates whether an entire table should be part of the scaffold (shown).
StringLength	Allows you to set a constraint on a property based on the specified minimum and maximum number of characters for a property.
UIHint	Used to specify a custom field user control that should be used to display the property.

Adding Custom Validation

You can see from Table 12-1 that you can use attributes to mark your metadata with specific constraints. These constraints will then be enforced by Dynamic Data, and ASP.NET validation controls will be rendered and invoked.

The validation attributes include Range, StringLength, Required, and RegularExpression (among others). You use these controls to enforce additional constraints on your data. For example, suppose you want to add the Range validator to the ReorderLevel property to indicate that users can only reorder stock in quantities of 1 to 144 units. You could do so with the following code.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
<Range(1, 144, ErrorMessage:="Quantity must be between 1 and 144")> _
Public Property ReorderLevel As Object
```

Sample of C# Code

```
[Range(1, 144, ErrorMessage = "Quantity must be between 1 and 144")]
public object ReorderLevel { get; set; }
```

This business logic is then processed by Dynamic Data. You can see the results of a row edit in Figure 12-28. Here the user set the ReorderLevel to a value that is out of range (0). You can follow this same construct for other validation attributes, including StringLength and Required. Of course, you can apply more than one attribute to any property.

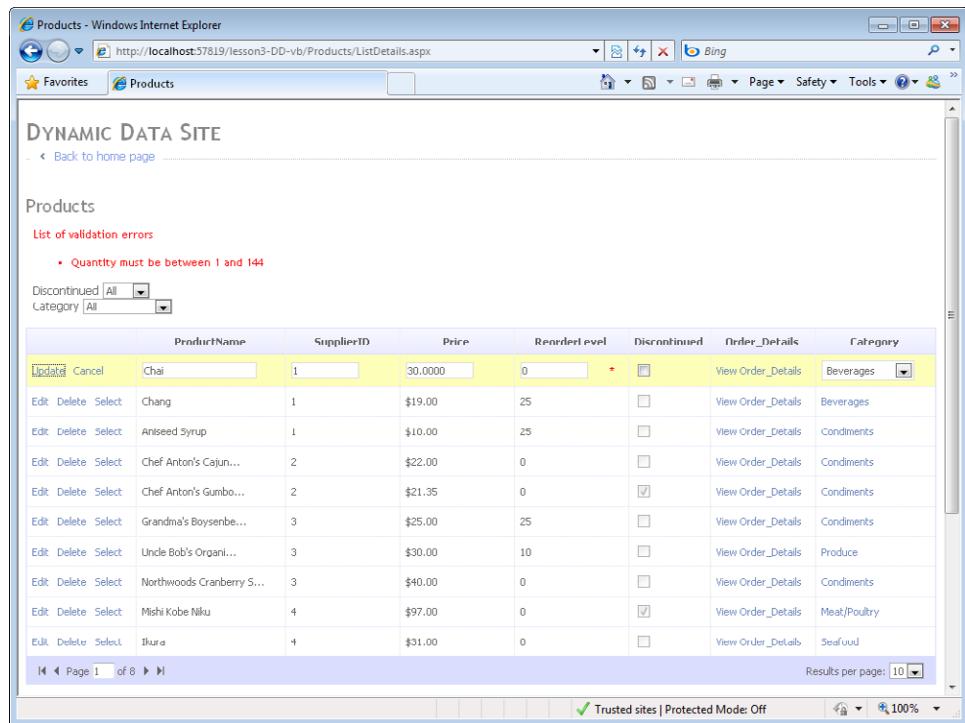


FIGURE 12-28 The Range constraint running in a browser window.

CUSTOM VALIDATION WITH PARTIAL METHODS

The data content model includes partial methods that allow you to add custom code that will be added to the method when the partial class is assembled. In fact, you can see these partial methods inside the Extensibility Method Definitions region of the generated code for a LINQ to SQL model. There are partial methods for `OnChanging` and `OnChanged` for each property in the data context. This means that the `Product` table has an `OnUnitPriceChanging` and `OnUnitPriceChanged` partial method. In fact, when you type “partial” into your partial class, Visual Studio’s IntelliSense provides you with a list of all partial methods that you can extend.

You can use these partial methods to write customized validation rules. Remember, your partial class is an instance of the actual class representing the entity. Therefore, you have access to all fields on the record. The `OnChanging` partial method is also passed the value to which the property is being changed. You can use these fields and this value to write custom business logic. If you encounter an error, you throw a `ValidationException` from `System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations`. Dynamic Data will present the exception to the user as an ASP.NET validation error.

As an example, suppose you want to write custom business logic that processes when the `Product.UnitPrice` is being changed. This logic might prevent a user from lowering the price of an object if there are items still in stock and the product has not been discontinued. You would add this code to the `Product` partial class as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Private Sub OnUnitPriceChanging(ByVal value As System.Nullable(Of Decimal))

    'rule: can only lower the price if product is discontinued
    If (Me.UnitsInStock > 0 And Me.UnitPrice > value) _
        And (Me.Discontinued = False) Then

        Throw New ValidationException( _
            "Cannot lower the price of an item that is not discontinued.")

    End If
```

```
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
partial void OnUnitPriceChanging(decimal? value)
{
    //rule: can only lower the price if product is discontinued
    if ((this.UnitsInStock > 0 && this.UnitPrice > value)
        && (this.Discontinued == false))
    {
        throw new ValidationException(
            "Cannot lower the price of an item that is not discontinued.");
    }
}
```

Figure 12-29 shows an example of this logic processing. Notice that the validation message is shown as part of the validation summary controls in ASP.NET.

FIGURE 12-29 The custom business logic being processed in the browser.

Creating Custom Field Templates

Recall that the Dynamic Data templates include the FieldTemplates folder. Inside this folder is a set of user controls that inherit from FieldTemplateUserControl. These controls are used to render the appearance and functionality of your data context properties when they are displayed on a details or edit page (or page section).

Field template controls are named as either display controls or edit controls for a specific data type and functionality. For example, the controls used to render DateTime values are DateTime.ascx and DateTime>Edit.ascx. The former is simply a Literal control that is used when a DateTime value is rendered for display. The edit version includes a TextBox, a RequiredFieldValidator, a RegularExpressionValidator, a DynamicValidator, and a CustomValidator control. This composite user control is used whenever a DateTime value is displayed for editing.

You can edit the field template controls or create new ones in order to provide additional behavior in your website. Edits to an existing control will apply to all uses of that control within your website. When you create a new control, you use metadata to specify which properties in your data model use the new control. You will look at both examples next.

CUSTOMIZING AN EXISTING FIELD TEMPLATE

You can customize an existing field template user control as you would any other user control. This means adding client-side script, changing the appearance, and modifying the processing logic.

For example, you could modify the code-behind file for each of the core edit controls (Text>Edit.ascx, DateTime>Edit.ascx, Decimal>Edit.ascx, Integer>Edit.ascx, and MultilineText>Edit.ascx) to change the background color of the control if the control represents a required field. To do so, you would add code to the OnDataBinding event. At this point, the SetupValidator methods have already run and any validation controls, including the RequiredFieldValidator, will already be set as either enabled or disabled. You could then add the following code to this event to set the background color accordingly.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Overrides Sub OnDataBinding(ByVal e As System.EventArgs)
    MyBase.OnDataBinding(e)
    If Me.RequiredFieldValidator1.Enabled = True Then
        TextBox1.BackColor = System.Drawing.Color.SandyBrown
    End If
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected override void OnDataBinding(EventArgs e)
{
    base.OnDataBinding(e);
    if (this.RequiredFieldValidator1.Enabled == true)
        TextBox1.BackColor = System.Drawing.Color.SandyBrown;
}
```

You can then add the `RequiredAttribute` class to any properties in your metadata class that you want to be required. When the control is rendered, Dynamic Data will mark the edit versions for these properties with the color if they are required fields.

CREATING A NEW FIELD TEMPLATE CONTROL

You can create your own custom field template user controls. You can do so by copying an existing user control in Dynamic Data/FieldTemplates or by selecting the Dynamic Data Field template from the Add New Item dialog box.

When you use the Dynamic Data Field item template, Visual Studio will actually generate two controls: one for display (`ControlName.ascx`) and one for editing (`ControlName_Edit.ascx`). The display version by default is just a `Literal` control. The edit version will include a `TextBox` control and the various validation controls used by `DynamicData`, some of which were shown in Table 12-1. You can then customize these controls to your needs.

As an example, suppose you want to create a new user control to allow users to use a `Calendar` control when picking a date in edit mode. To do so, you can add a new Dynamic Data Field to your project named `CalendarPicker.ascx`. Again, this will create two controls. You can leave the display version as is. You might then modify the markup in the `CalendarPicker_Edit.ascx` control to use a `Calendar` control, as follows.

```
<%@ Control Language="VB" CodeFile="CalendarPicker_Edit.ascx.vb"
Inherits="DynamicData_FieldTemplates_CalendarPicker_EditField" %>

<asp:Calendar ID="Calendar1" runat="server"
CssClass="DDTextBox"></asp:Calendar>
```

You would then add code to the code-behind page for the control to set the value of the `Calendar` control when data binding occurs. This code might look as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Overrides Sub OnDataBinding(ByVal e As System.EventArgs)
    MyBase.OnDataBinding(e)
    Dim dte As DateTime = DateTime.Parse(Me.FieldValue)
    Calendar1.SelectedDate = dte
    Calendar1.VisibleDate = dte
End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected override void OnDataBinding(EventArgs e)
{
    base.OnDataBinding(e);
    DateTime dte = DateTime.Parse(this.FieldValue.ToString());
    Calendar1.SelectedDate = dte;
    Calendar1.VisibleDate = dte;
}
```

The last step is to mark your metadata properties to indicate that they should use this new control. You do so with the UIHint attribute. You pass the name of your control to this attribute. Dynamic Data will then find your control and use it for all display and edits (including GridView edits) that involve this field. As an example, the following metadata marks the HireDate and BirthDate properties of the Employee class to use the custom CalendarPicker control.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
<MetadataType(GetType(EmployeeMetadata))> _
Partial Public Class Employee

End Class

Public Class EmployeeMetadata

    <UIHint("CalendarPicker")> _
    Public Property HireDate As Object

    <UIHint("CalendarPicker")> _
    Public Property BirthDate As Object

End Class
```

Sample of C# Code

```
[MetadataType(typeof(EmployeeMetadata))]
public partial class Employee
{
}

public class EmployeeMetadata
{
    [UIHint("CalendarPicker")]
    public object HireDate { get; set; }

    [UIHint("CalendarPicker")]
    public object BirthDate { get; set; }
}
```

Figure 12-30 shows the control in use on a webpage.

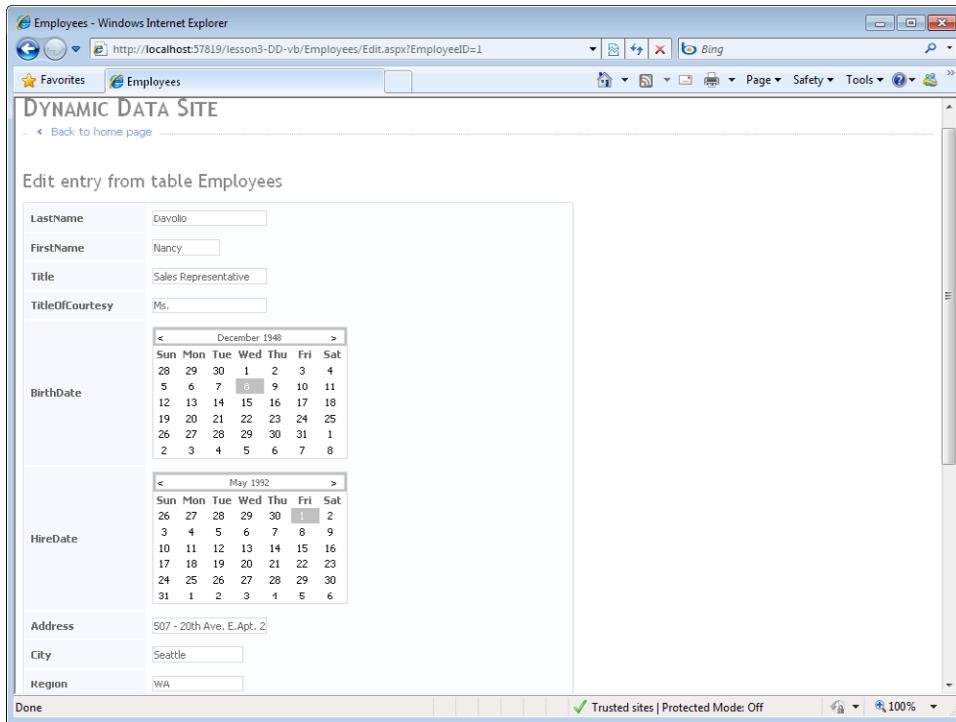


FIGURE 12-30 The custom field template being used in the browser.

Creating Custom Page Templates

Recall that the Dynamic Data templates are not specific to an object in your data context. Rather, they are generic templates that get information about the data they display from your data context at run time. You can customize how these templates display your data by using a metadata partial class and the data annotation attributes. However, you might find scenarios in which you need to create an entity-specific version of a page to control exactly how that entity is rendered to the browser. In this case, you need to create a custom page template.

Custom page templates are specific to a single entity in your data context. You create them by first creating a new folder inside the `CustomPages` folder. This folder should have the same name as your entity object. To create custom pages for working with products, for example, you would create a `Products` folder inside `CustomPages`. You then copy one or more of the page templates from the `PageTemplates` directory into your new folder. The Dynamic Data routing will look first in the `CustomPages/EntityName` folders for action pages such as `Edit.aspx`, `Insert.aspx`, and `List.aspx`. If the file it is looking for is there, it will use this custom page for display. If not, it will use the default action page inside the `PageTemplates` directory.

As an example, suppose you want to create a custom version of the List.aspx page for use with Products. You would create a Products folder in CustomPages. You would then copy the List.aspx page to that folder. You can then open this page and edit the markup and code-behind accordingly. A common edit is to bind the GridView control more tightly with the specific product. You can do so by setting the AutoGenerateColumns property to false. You can then add a series of DynamicField properties to represent your bound data. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="GridDataSource" EnablePersistedSelection="true"
    AllowPaging="True" AllowSorting="True" CssClass="DDGridView"
    RowStyle-CssClass="td" HeaderStyle-CssClass="th" CellPadding="6"
    AutoGenerateColumns="false">
    <Columns>
        <asp:DynamicField DataField="ProductID" HeaderText="ID" />
        <asp:DynamicField DataField="ProductName" HeaderText="Name" />
        <asp:DynamicField DataField="UnitPrice" HeaderText="Price" />
        <asp:DynamicField DataField="UnitsInStock" HeaderText="Stock" />
        <asp:TemplateField>
            <ItemTemplate>
                <asp:DynamicHyperLink runat="server" Action="Edit" Text="Edit"/>
                &nbsp;<asp:LinkButton runat="server"
                    CommandName="Delete" Text="Delete" OnClientClick=
                        'return confirm("Are you sure you want to delete this item?");'>
                &nbsp;<asp:DynamicHyperLink runat="server" Text="Details" />
            </ItemTemplate>
        </asp:TemplateField>
    </Columns>
    <PagerStyle CssClass="DDFooter"/>
    <PagerTemplate>
        <asp:GridViewPager runat="server" />
    </PagerTemplate>
    <EmptyDataTemplate>
        There are currently no items in this table.
    </EmptyDataTemplate>
</asp:GridView>
```

Figure 12-31 shows this custom page running in a browser.

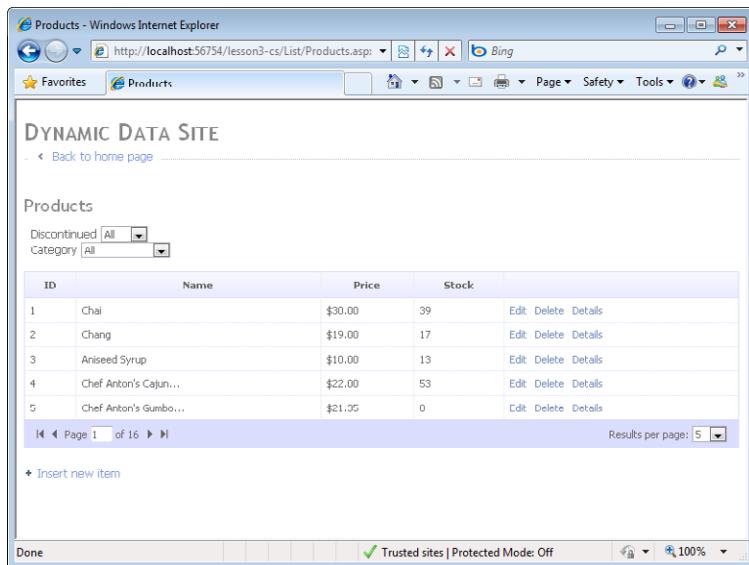


FIGURE 12-31 The custom page template being displayed in the browser.

Using Dynamic Controls in Existing Sites

You can use the features of Dynamic Data in existing sites. For example, you can add the full scaffolding and connect to a data context for CRUD operations, and you can create custom webpages (or customize existing ones) to take advantage of the lower code, lower markup solution that Dynamic Data offers.

Adding Dynamic Data Scaffolding to an Existing Website

You can add Dynamic Data scaffolding to an existing website. To do so, you must have a data context defined in your site (or you must create one). Remember, Dynamic Data works with either LINQ to SQL classes, the ADO.NET Entity Framework, or a custom data context.

You then edit the Global.asax file to register your context and enable custom routing. This code can be copied from the Global.asax file for a blank Dynamic Data site. Refer back to "Getting Started with Dynamic Data Websites" earlier in this lesson for details.

Finally, you copy the DynamicData folder from a blank Dynamic Data site into your existing site. You can then make customizations and use Dynamic Data features as discussed in prior sections.

Enabling Dynamic Data Inside a Webpage

You can use Dynamic Data inside completely custom webpages that do not use the scaffolding or routing common to Dynamic Data. For this scenario, you can create pages that use data-bound controls such as GridView, DetailsView, ListView, and FormView, and use Dynamic Data for displaying, editing, and validating data. In this case, you get the default behavior of Dynamic Data, including data validation. You can then customize this behavior by adding more information to your meta-model as described previously.

As an example, suppose you have a standard ASP.NET website (not one built with the Dynamic Data template). Suppose that this site has an ADO.NET Entity Data Model for working with the Northwind database.

You can then add an EntityDataSource control to the Default.aspx page for the site. This control can be set to use the entity model for selecting, inserting, updating, and deleting. Recall that you set EntitySetName to indicate the entity used by the data source. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:EntityDataSource ID="EntityDataSource1" runat="server"
    ConnectionString="name=northwndEntities"
    DefaultContainerName="northwndEntities" EnableDelete="True"
    EnableFlattening="False" EnableInsert="True" EnableUpdate="True"
    EntitySetName="Products">
</asp:EntityDataSource>
```

Next, you can add a data display control to the page. In this example, assume you add a GridView to the page. You would then configure this control to auto-generate columns and enable editing. The following markup shows an example.

```
<asp:GridView ID="GridView1" runat="server"
    DataSourceID="EntityDataSource1"
    AllowPaging="True" AllowSorting="True"
    AutoGenerateColumns="true">
    <Columns>
        <asp:CommandField ShowEditButton="True" />
    </Columns>
</asp:GridView>
```

The final step is to add code to the Page_Init event to enable the Dynamic Data. The following code shows an example.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
Protected Sub Page_Load1(ByVal sender As Object, _
    ByVal e As System.EventArgs) Handles Me.Load

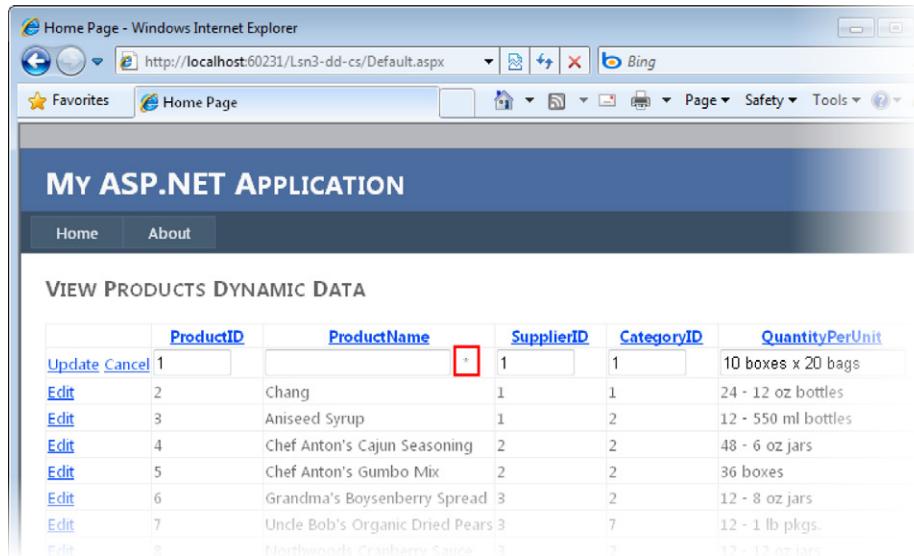
    GridView1.EnableDynamicData(GetType(northwndModel.Product));

End Sub
```

Sample of C# Code

```
protected void Page_Init(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    GridView1.EnableDynamicData(typeof(northwndModel.Product));
}
```

Figure 12-32 shows the results. Notice that the attempt to edit the first record failed. You can see the asterisk next to the ProductName field. This is because this field cannot be blank, as defined in the model. You can further customize this page to use even more features from Dynamic Data.



The screenshot shows a standard ASP.NET application titled "My ASP.NET APPLICATION". Below the title bar is a navigation menu with "Home" and "About" buttons. The main content area is titled "VIEW PRODUCTS DYNAMIC DATA". A table displays product information with columns: ProductID, ProductName, SupplierID, CategoryID, and QuantityPerUnit. The first row's ProductName cell contains an asterisk (*) and has a red square box drawn around it. The table includes a header row with "Update" and "Cancel" buttons. The data rows are numbered 1 through 8, each with an "Edit" link. The "QuantityPerUnit" column contains descriptive text for each product.

	ProductID	ProductName	SupplierID	CategoryID	QuantityPerUnit
Update Cancel	1		1	1	10 boxes x 20 bags
Edit	2	Chang	1	1	24 - 12 oz bottles
Edit	3	Aniseed Syrup	1	2	12 - 550 ml bottles
Edit	4	Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning	2	2	48 - 6 oz jars
Edit	5	Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	2	2	36 boxes
Edit	6	Grandma's Boysenberry Spread	3	2	12 - 8 oz jars
Edit	7	Uncle Bob's Organic Dried Pears	3	7	12 - 1 lb pkgs.
Edit	8	Northwoods Cranberry Sauce	3	2	12 - 12 oz jars

FIGURE 12-32 Dynamic Data being used on a standard webpage.



Quick Check

1. What data models can you use with Dynamic Data?
2. Where do you register your data model with the site's MetaModel?
3. Which of the data annotation classes would you use to define metadata to change the display format of a property?

Quick Check Answers

1. Dynamic data must use a data model based on `DataContext` or `ObjectContext`. This includes LINQ to SQL classes and ADO.NET Entity Framework models.
2. You register your data context inside the `Global.asax` file.
3. You would use the `DisplayFormatAttribute`.

In this practice, you create a Dynamic Data website and edit the default routing.

ON THE COMPANION MEDIA

If you encounter a problem completing an exercise, you can find the completed projects in the samples installed from this book's companion CD. For more information about the project files and other content on the CD, see "Using the Companion Media" in this book's Introduction.

EXERCISE Creating a Dynamic Data Website and an Entity Model

In this exercise, you create a new Dynamic Data website, add a database to the site, and define an Entity Data Model. You then configure the site to work with the model and customize the routing.

1. Open Visual Studio and create a new ASP.NET Dynamic Data Entities Web Site. Name the site **DynamicDataLab**. Select your preferred programming language.
2. Add the northwnd.mdf file to your App_Data directory. You can copy the file from the samples installed from the CD.
3. Add an ADO.NET Entity Data Model to your site. Name the model **Northwind.edmx**. When prompted, allow Visual Studio to add this to your App_Code directory. Use the Entity Data Model Wizard to connect to all tables in the database; use the default settings throughout the wizard.
4. Open the Global.asax file. Inside RegisterRoutes, uncomment the line that calls RegisterContext. Change this code to register your new entity model and set ScaffoldAllTables to true. Your code should look as follows.

Sample of Visual Basic Code

```
'VB  
DefaultModel.RegisterContext(GetType(northwndModel.northwndEntities), _  
    New ContextConfiguration() With {.ScaffoldAllTables = True})
```

Sample of C# Code

```
DefaultModel.RegisterContext(typeof(northwndModel.northwndEntities),  
    new ContextConfiguration() { ScaffoldAllTables = true });
```

5. Run the application and view the results. Select Products. Click to edit a product. Notice the URL routing. On the product editing page, clear the name field and click update. Notice the validation that is displayed.

6. Return to the Global.asax file to enable routing to ListDetails.aspx. This page allows you to edit a row directly in the GridView as well as in a DetailsView on the same page. To enable row editing, comment out the routes.Add call for {table}/{action}. Then uncomment both routes.Add calls at the bottom of the method. Notice that these routes indicate that the List and Details actions should route to ListDetails.aspx. This page handles all other actions inline with the page.
7. Rerun the site. Select the Products table. Notice the new URL. Click the Edit link for a product in the GridView control. Notice the inline editing and data validation.

Lesson Summary

- There are two Dynamic Data website templates in ASP.NET: one for working with the Entity Framework and one for working with LINQ to SQL models. Both create a set of page and field template files inside the DynamicData folder. Both allow you to connect your data context to the site inside the Global.asax file.
- You can use the System.Web.Routing inside the Global.asax file to indicate how your Dynamic Data site maps entity requests and actions formatted in a URI to page templates.
- You use partial classes to extend the metadata of your data context. This metadata includes attributes from the DataAnnotations namespace that define display formatting properties and validation rules.
- You can write additions to the OnChanging partial methods from your data context model to extend individual properties to include additional business logic.
- You can create custom field templates that change how properties are displayed and edited. These field templates inherit from FieldTemplateUserControl. You apply a custom field template as metadata to a property in your partial entity class by using the UIHintAttribute.
- You can create custom page templates that are entity specific inside the CustomPages folder. You add a folder with the same name as your entity. You then define custom action pages such as List.aspx and Edit.aspx.
- You can use the EnableDynamicData method of the data view controls (such as GridView) to add Dynamic Data features to existing websites that do not contain the standard scaffolding.

Lesson Review

You can use the following questions to test your knowledge of the information in Lesson 3, "Working with ASP.NET Dynamic Data." The questions are also available on the companion CD in a practice test, if you prefer to review them in electronic form.

NOTE ANSWERS

Answers to these questions and explanations of why each answer choice is correct or incorrect are located in the "Answers" section at the end of the book.

1. You need to add metadata to your data context object, Invoice, in order to change how invoices are handled by Dynamic Data. Which actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. Create a new partial class called Invoice in the App_Code directory.
 - B. Create a new class called InvoiceAnnotations in the App_Code directory.
 - C. Decorate the Invoice class with the MetadataTypeAttribute class.
 - D. Decorate the InvoiceAnnotations class with the ScaffoldTableAttribute class.
2. You have defined a custom field template user control for changing the way an Invoice number is edited. You want to apply this control to the Invoice.Number property. Which data annotation attribute class would you use to do so?
 - A. MetadataType
 - B. Display
 - C. Editable
 - D. UIHint
3. You want to implement custom business logic that should run when the InvoiceNumber property is modified. What actions should you take? (Choose all that apply.)
 - A. Add a CustomValidator control to the DynamicData/FieldTemplates/Integer_Edit.aspx file. Set this control to process custom logic to validate an invoice number.
 - B. Extend the OnInvoiceNumberChanged partial method inside the Invoice partial class to include additional validation logic.
 - C. Extend the OnInvoiceNumberChanging partial method inside the Invoice partial class to include additional validation logic.
 - D. If the logic fails, throw a ValidationException instance.

Case Scenarios

In the following case scenarios, you apply what you've learned in this chapter. If you have difficulty completing this work, review the material in this chapter before beginning the next chapter. You can find answers to these questions in the "Answers" section at the end of this book.

Case Scenario 1: Choosing Data Source Controls

You are a developer at Contoso, Ltd, a car insurance company. You have been asked to write an application that allows a customer service agent to provide an insurance quote to a customer over the phone. However, there are many factors that go into pricing the insurance policy. Each of these factors contains data from different sources. This data is displayed to the agent for selection. Based on his or her selection, a price is generated.

You identify most of the data sources as follows:

- **Location premium markup data** Provided as XML from a web service.
- **Year, make, and model rates** Provided inside a SQL Server database.
- **Driver history** Provided through an XML web service.
- **Existing customer information** Provided through a shared customer object to which the application has a reference.

Thinking about how you will access the data, answer the following questions:

1. Which data source control would you use for accessing the data returned by the location and driver history web services? How would you configure the data source control to receive this data?
2. Which data source control would you use for accessing the year, make, and model rate data?
3. How would you access the data provided by the customer object?

Case Scenario 2: Implementing a Master-Detail Solution

You are a developer who is creating a webpage for displaying customers and their orders in a master-detail scenario. The top of the webpage will provide a list of customers that contains the customer numbers and names. The bottom of the webpage will provide a list of the orders containing the order numbers, the order dates, the order amounts, and the ship dates. The orders will be displayed for the customer that is selected.

Thinking about how you will display your data, answer the following questions:

1. What controls would you use to display the customer and orders?
2. If you want to use this webpage to add customers and orders, what are some ways that you can provide this functionality?

Case Scenario 3: Adding ASP.NET Dynamic Data to a Website

You are a developer working on an existing website. There are several core tables in the database that users cannot edit. This is becoming a problem, because maintenance is needed. You have been asked to quickly enable this editing for some of these tables not already exposed by the functionality of your website.

Answer the following questions about how you would enable this functionality using Dynamic Data.

1. How can you add Dynamic Data scaffolding to this existing site?
2. How would you indicate which tables to expose through Dynamic Data?

Suggested Practices

To help you successfully master the exam objectives presented in this chapter, complete the following tasks.

Create Pages by Using Each of the Controls

For this task, you should complete Practice 1 for the data source controls. Practice 2 should be completed for additional use of the data-bound web controls. If attempting Practice 2, you should complete Practice 1 first. Practice 3 provides experience with using the insert, update, and delete parts of a data source control.

- **Practice 1** Create a new website and add a new page for each of the data source controls in this chapter, especially those not defined in the practice for Lesson 1. Configure these controls to access data.
- **Practice 2** Add the ability to display the data defined in the pages in Practice 1. For each data source, select a different display control. Use the Menu control for XML data. Also, be sure to define a layout control that uses templates.
- **Practice 3** Return to the practice for Lesson 1. Edit the site to enable customer editing.

Create a Master-Detail Solution by Using the Data-Bound Server Controls

This practice gives you experience with using data-bound server controls.

- Create a new website that uses a domain familiar to you, such as customers and orders, owners and vehicles, employees and sick days, or albums and songs. Add a webpage that is configurable as a master-detail page to provide access to related data.

Work with Dynamic Data Websites

For this task, you should complete Practices 1 and 2 to gain experience creating custom field and page templates. Complete Practice 3 for experience with using Dynamic Data outside a Dynamic Data website.

- **Practice 1** Return to the practice from Lesson 3. Create a custom field template for selecting dates. Use the CalendarPicker example from the chapter. Apply this control to date values in the site.
- **Practice 2** Return to the practice from Lesson 3. Create a custom page template for displaying only portions of an Employee object.
- **Practice 3** Create a new, standard ASP.NET website. Define a data context connected to a database. Enable Dynamic Data for a single page within the site (without adding the scaffolding support).

Take a Practice Test

The practice tests on this book's companion CD offer many options. For example, you can test yourself on just the lesson review questions in this chapter, or you can test yourself on all the 70-515 certification exam objectives. You can set up the test so it closely simulates the experience of taking a certification exam, or you can set it up in study mode so you can look at the correct answers and explanations after you answer each question.

MORE INFO PRACTICE TESTS

For details about all the practice test options available, see the "How to Use the Practice Tests" section in this book's Introduction.

Index

Symbols

@ Control directive, 332
@ Page directive
 Debug attribute, 391
 MVC views and, 857
@ Register directive, 265, 339, 378
\$.ajax() method, 535–537
\$create method, 498

A

About method of HomeController class, 840
absolute positioning, avoiding, 304
ACCDB files, 702
Access
 connecting to, 702
 database engine, 702
access rules
 creating, 806–807
 creating (practice), 822–824
AccessDataSource control
 configuring, 702
 explained, 702
accessibility
 benefits of, for all users, 318
 controls and, 313–314
 guidelines for, 313
 keyboard shortcuts, 316–317
 practice for, 322–324
 Rehabilitation Act standards, 313
 testing, 318–320
 visual, 314–315
Accessibility Validation dialog box, 319
AccessKey property of controls, 166, 167, 316

action filters (MVC), 856
ActionLink method of HtmlHelper class, 858
ActionResult class, 853
ActionResult objects, 836
ActiveViewIndex property of View control, 208
Add method of Datatable.Rows object, 652
AddUserToRole method of Roles class, 816
administrative privileges, setting launch condition
 for, 431
ADO.NET Entity Data Model. *See Entity Framework (EF); LINQ to Entities*
AJAX
 advantages of, 454
 calling REST services from, 606–607
 class libraries, creating, 513
 client components, 495–492, 495–496
 client components, creating (practice), 504–505
 client life cycle events, 493–494
 jQuery and, 535–539
 in master pages, 459
 Microsoft AJAX Library, 456, 458
 overview of, 455
 user control functionality, 459
 uses for, 457
 web services and, 583–585
AJAX applications
 debugging, 409
 tracing, 409
AJAX client controls
 connecting with DOM elements, 498–499
 creating, 496–498, 502–503, 505
 creating (practice), 507–510
 embedding as custom controls, 512–517
 implementing on webpages, 498–499, 510–512,
 517–518
AJAX Control Toolkit, 456

- AJAX Library
 - browser compatibility, 484
 - class inheritance, 490, 491, 498
 - client objects, 494
 - creating classes in, 487, 492
 - enumerations, 490–491
 - features and benefits, 484
 - files comprising, 484
 - functions, overriding, 491
 - globalization support, 484
 - interfaces, 490–491
 - namespaces, 485–486
 - overview of, 456
 - properties, naming, 488
 - pushing to client, 458
 - reference for, 486
 - referencing, 495
 - referencing (practice), 508
 - registering classes with, 490, 498
 - registering classes with (practice), 505, 510
 - registering events, 493
 - registering interfaces with, 491
 - unregistering events, 493
 - uses for, 486
- AJAX server controls
 - base objects, 494
 - class inheritance, 458
 - connecting with DOM elements, 498–499
 - overview of, 456, 457–458
 - ScriptManager, 458
- AjaxEnabled conflicts, 518
- Align property of tables, avoiding, 304
- aligning images, 190
- AllowPartiallyTrustedCallers property, 442
- AllowPasswordChange function, 489
- AlternateText property of Image control, 190, 314
- ampersands in query strings, 135
- animations, adding to pages, 533–534
- anonymous user profiles
 - authorizing, 819
 - enabling, 793, 794–795
 - enabling (practice), 798–802
 - impersonating, 821
 - migrating, 795
- AnswerLookupError event of PasswordRecovery control, 812
- App_LocalResources folder, 293
- App_Themes folder, 61
- application caching, 75. *See also Cache object*
- Application collection, 103
- application events, 101–102
- application extension mapping, 556–557
- application MIME type, 9
- Application object, 493
- application state
 - overview of, 144
 - reading/writing data for, 103
 - vs. session state, 144
 - storing data in (practice), 151–152
 - temporary nature of, 145
- application users, counting, 103
- application variables, 49–50
- ApplicationManager class, 100
- applications. *See web applications*
- ApplyStyleSheetSkin method of Control object, 106
- AreaRegistration class, 839
- arrays, LINQ queries against, 628
- ASCX files, 331
 - in MVC, 865–866
 - overview of. *See user controls*
- ASHX files, 557. *See also HTTP handlers*
- ASMX files. *See also web services*
 - adding, 576
 - defined, 576
- ASP pages, converting to ASP.NET, 178–179
- ASP.NET
 - configuration files. *See configuration files*
 - debugging, 6
 - installing on IIS, 442–443
 - special folders, 23
- ASP.NET 3.5, reverting to rendering engine, 166
- ASP.NET application life cycle, 100–103
- ASP.NET Dynamic Data
 - adding to existing website, 777
 - advantages of, 755
 - classes, 762
 - creating website, 756–758
 - creating website (practice), 780–781
 - custom page templates, 775–776
 - custom routing, 763–765
 - CustomPages folder, 775
 - enabling, 778–779
 - field template user controls, creating, 773
 - field templates, 772

field templates, customizing, 772–773
folder contents, 758
ListDetails.aspx file, 764
metadata annotation classes, 768–769
overview of, 755
route table, editing, 764
structure of, 756–758
template user interface, 761
templates for, 756
URI structure, editing, 764
validation, 769–771

ASP.NET master pages
advantages of, 43, 44
AJAX support and, 459
attaching to content pages, 48
class derivation, when multiple, 50
class inheritance, 44
control required for, 48
controls, referencing from content pages, 51
creating, 45–46
creating (practice), 54–57
dependencies on content pages, managing, 49
dynamically changing, 52–53
dynamically changing (practice), 57–58
example of, 45–46
file extension for, 44
InitializeCulture event and, 307
JavaScript references to controls in, 476
multiple, 50
in MVC, 857
nesting, 51–52
overview of, 44–45
public properties in, 49–50
referencing properties from content pages, 48–49, 50
reloading automatically after changes, 57
run time processing of, 45
selecting for ASPX pages, 47
settings inheritance, 47
style sheet reference in, 54
<title> tag, 46
varying by situation, 52–53

ASP.NET MVC
action filters, 856
action methods, 840
advantages of, 832
application areas, 838–839
application structure, 837–838

architecture of, 833–834
area mapping, 839
HtmlHelper class, 858–859
master pages in, 857
model, 834
model, creating custom, 848
namespaces, 839
overview of, 831, 832
partially generated model, 849–850
placeholders, 867
project template folders, 838
registering routes, 867
request life cycle, 834–835
route constraints, 868
route handling, preventing, 868–869
route parameters, 867
route segments, 867
routing in, 835–836
URL patterns, 867
validating model, 850–851
web application, creating (practice), 842–843, 870–871

ASP.NET pages. *See ASPX pages*

ASP.NET State Service, 148

ASP.NET websites
adding webpages to (practice), 31
ASPX pages. *See ASPX pages*
code languages in, 25
compiling, 28
configuration files. *See configuration files*
creating, 16
creating (practice), 30–31
default objects, 22
deploying, 418–425
error pages. *See error pages*
file-system-based, 15, 17–19
FTP-based, 15, 21
HTTP-based, 15
precompiling, 28, 441–442
project files, 22
special folders, 23
as startup project, setting, 382
user interface. *See user interface*
varying appearance by user. *See themes*
vs. web applications, 16–17

aspnet_regiis.exe, 442
Aspnet_regsqI.exe, 791

- ASPNETDB database, 264
ASPX pages. *See also* webpages
 code section, 23, 27
 converting ASP pages into, 178–179
 creating, 27–28
 page directives, 27
 page layout, 23, 27
 single-file vs. code-behind, 23–26
aspxErrorPath parameter, 393
assemblies
 overview of, 29
 referencing JavaScript in, 478
 signing, 442
 strong naming, enabling, 442
AssociatedControlID property of controls, 167
AssociatedHeaderCellID property of TableCell control, 315
AssociatedUpdatePanelId property of UpdateProgress control, 462
Association class, 768
asynchronous handlers
 creating, 558–564
 overview of, 558
 webpages as, 564–566
Asynchronous Javascript and XML (AJAX)
 advantages of, 454
 calling REST services from, 606–607
 class libraries, creating, 513
 client components, 495–492, 495–496
 client components, creating (practice), 504–505
 client life cycle events, 493–494
 jQuery and, 535–539
 in master pages, 459
 Microsoft AJAX Library, 456, 458
 overview of, 455
 user control functionality, 459
 uses for, 457
 web services and, 583–585
asynchronous postbacks, allowing users to cancel, 463, 494
asynchronous programming
 benefits and drawbacks of, 558
 overview of, 558
asynchronous webpages, creating, 564–566
audio MIME type, 9
Authenticate method of FormsAuthentication class, 814
authentication. *See also* authorization
 cookies for, 814
 defined, 818
 enabling with Web Parts (practice), 278
 forms, 813–814
 logon controls, 807–808
 logon pages, 810
 overview of, 787
 for remote debugging, 395
 responsibility for, 788
 of servers, 4, 5
 sliding expiration, 814
 timeout, resetting, 814
 type, selecting, 804–805
 type, selecting (practice), 822–824
 user preference, setting, 808
 of users, 4
 of web services, 586
Windows, 817
authorization. *See also* authentication
 access rules, creating, 806–807
 of anonymous users, 819
 defined, 818
 of folders/files, 819–820
 Machine.config section, 818
 settings inheritance, 820
 of users, 4
 Web.config section, 818
 Windows permissions and, 818, 821
automatic postback, 112
AutoPage attribute of EntityDataSource control, 706
AutoPostBack property, 112
AutoSort attribute of EntityDataSource control, 706

B

- BackColor property of controls, 165
back-end, 3. *See also* servers
background color, accessibility considerations, 314
BackImageUrl property of Panel control, 205
bandwidth considerations
 overview of, 81
 state management and, 122
BaseDataBoundControl class, 722
BeginForm method of HtmlHelper class, 858
BeginProcessRequest method, 559, 565

- beginRequest event of PageRequestManager class, 494
 behavior objects
 vs. client objects, 502
 creating, 502–503
 ExtenderControl class, 502
 implementing, 503
 overview of, 494
- Bind method of DataBinder class, 724
 Bindable attribute for control properties, 367
 binding data, 723–724. *See also* data-bound controls
 bindings, WCF, 594
 bitmaps, referencing in controls, 365
 Boolean operators, 432
 BorderColor property of controls, 165
 BorderStyle property of controls, 165
 BorderWidth property of controls, 165, 189
 breadcrumb trail, 256
 breakpoints. *See also* debugging
 exporting/importing, 391
 setting, 400
 browser definition files, custom, 23
 browser redirection
 to error pages, 392–393
 overview of, 3
 as page navigation method, 247, 250–251
 browsers, web
 communication with servers, 3
 DNS resolution, 5
 error messages. *See* error pages; HTTP status codes
 as front-end interface, 3
 HTML display, 5
 language preference, setting, 299
 master page variation for, 52–53
 redirection. *See* redirection
 server authentication, 5
 sniffer add-ons, 11
 buffering web service responses, 579
 BulletedList control, 727
 business objects, 690–693. *See also* ObjectDataSource control
 Button control, 107
 connecting to JavaScript method, 474–475
 defining as command button, 176
 defining Click event for, 111
 rendering as image/hyperlink, 177
 types of, 175
- Button.CausesValidation property, 177
 Button.Click event, 107, 111, 176
 Button.Command event, 176
 Button.CommandArgument property, 177
 Button.PostBackUrl property, 248

C

C#

- event handlers, creating, 111
- time display code, 24–25
- Cache method of Response object, 84
 Cache object, 76. *See also* application caching
 cache profiles, 88
 CacheDependency objects, 77
 Cache.Insert method, 76–77
 caching
 - absolute expiration, 77–52, 78
 - for applications, 88
 - dependencies, creating, 77
 - determining whether to regenerate page, 85–87
 - duration, setting, 83
 - and Google search results, 42
 - independent pages, 82–83
 - ObjectDataSource control, 697
 - overview of, 4
 - page-output, 80
 - partial-page, 84
 - priority for item removal, 77
 - process for, 75
 - referencing cache profiles, 88
 - reloading after file changes, 77
 - scavenging, 77
 - sliding expiration, 77, 79
 - SQLDataSource control, 701
 - substitution, 84–85
 - validating pages, 85–86
- Calendar control
 - accessibility considerations, 315
 - caption, aligning, 197
 - caption, setting, 197
 - cell padding, setting, 197
 - cell spacing, setting, 197
 - displaying schedule with, 199
 - example code, 199

- Calendar control (*continued*)
 - formatting, 197
 - HTML generated by, 197
 - Label controls, adding, 199
 - navigational controls, formatting, 197
 - overview of, 197
 - properties, 197–199
- Calendar.DayRender event, 199
- Calendar.SelectionChanged event, 199
- Calendar.SelectionMode property, 197
- Calendar.VisibleMonthChanged event, 199
- callbacks
 - creating, 480–483
 - defined, 480
 - overview of, 483
- callBaseMethod method of Type class, 495
- canceling asynchronous postbacks, 463
- Caption property
 - of Calendar control, 197
 - of Table control, 315
- CaptionAlign property of Calendar control, 197
- cascading style sheet (.css) files
 - adding to websites, 65–66
 - adding to websites (practice), 70
 - additional references on, 66
 - defined, 60, 61
 - example styles, 66
 - HTML reference to, 66
 - overview of, 65
 - referencing in master pages, 54
 - vs. skin files, 64
 - template for, 65
- CatalogPart control, 263
- CatalogZone control, 262, 263, 267
- Category attribute for control properties, 367
- CausesValidation property of Button control, 177
- CDNs (content delivery networks), 523
- CellPadding property of Calendar control, 197
- cells, table. *See* TableCell control
- CellSpacing property of Calendar control, 197
- chaining functions in jQuery, 527
- ChangePassword control, 167, 808, 812
- ChangePassword.aspx page, 812
- ChangePasswordSuccess.aspx page, 812
- Chart class, 722
- Chart control, 738–739
- charts
 - configuring, 739
 - graphic file for, 738
- CheckBox control, 172, 476
- CheckBox method of HtmlHelper class, 858
- CheckBox.CheckedChanged event, 172
- CheckBoxList control, 727
- CheckedChanged event of CheckBox control, 172, 476
- checkout page, accessibility (practice), 322–324
- CheckPasswordStrength function, 489
- child master pages, 51–52
- class inheritance
 - of AJAX Library, 490, 491, 498
 - of AJAX server controls, 458
 - of custom web server controls, 356
 - of hot spots, 193
 - of master pages, 44
 - in Microsoft AJAX Library, 491
 - of user controls, 331
 - in WCF Data Services, 608
- class libraries, creating, 513
- classes
 - constructors, defining as functions, 504, 508
 - creating in AJAX Library, 487, 492, 498
 - defining for custom controls, 499
 - fields, defining, 488
 - LINQ queries against, 629
 - methods, adding to, 489
 - prototypes, creating, 508
 - referencing in scripts, 492
 - registering, 490
- classes, listed
 - ActionResult, 853
 - ApplicationManager, 100
 - AreaRegistration, 839
 - Association, 768
 - BaseDataBoundControl, 722
 - Chart, 722
 - ClientScriptManager, 475–478
 - CompositeDataBoundControl, 722
 - ContentResult, 853
 - CustomValidation, 768
 - DashboardController, 865
 - DataAnnotations, 850–851, 860–864
 - DataBinder, 723–724
 - DataBoundControl, 722

DataContract, 597
DataMember, 597
DataObject, 697–698
DataService, 608
DataType, 768
Display, 768
DisplayFormat, 768
Editable, 768
EmptyResult, 853
EnumDataType, 768
ExtenderControl, 502
FieldTemplateUserControl, 772
FileResult, 853
FilterAttribute, 856
FormsAuthentication, 813–814
HierarchicalDataBoundControl, 722, 741–746
HostingEnvironment, 100
HtmlHelper, 858–859
HttpApplication, 101–102, 566–567
HttpApplicationState, 103, 144
HttpSessionState, 145
JavaScriptResult, 853
JsonResult, 853
Key, 769
ListControl, 722, 724
MasterPage, 44
Membership, 815
MetadataType, 769
NetworkCredentials, 586
OperationContract, 597
PageRequestManager, 494
PartialViewResult, 853
ProfileProvider, 792
Range, 769
RedirectResult, 853
RedirectToRouteResult, 853
RegularExpression, 769
Required, 769
Roles, 816
ScaffoldColumn, 769
ScaffoldTable, 769
ScriptReference, 479
ServiceContract, 597
SiteMap, 253
SqlProfileProvider, 790
StringLength, 769
TemplateControl, 331
Trace, 408
Type (AJAX), 487
UIHint, 769
UserControl, 331
ViewResult, 853
WebApplicationLifetimeEvent, 412
WebAuditEvent, 413
WebAuthenticationFailureAuditEvent, 413
WebAuthenticationSuccessAuditEvent, 413
WebBaseErrorEvent, 412
WebBaseEvent, 412
WebControl, 187, 356, 361–363
WebErrorEvent, 412
WebFailureAuditEvent, 413
WebHeartbeatEvent, 412
WebManagementEvent, 412
WebMethodAttribute, 579–580
WebRequestErrorEvent, 413
WebRequestEvent, 412
WebService, 577, 578
WebServiceAttribute, 578–579
WebSuccessAuditEvent, 413
WebViewStateFailureAuditEvent, 413
ClassName method of Namespace object, 487
Click event
 for Button control, 107, 111, 176
 for ImageButton control, 191
 for ImageMap control, 193
client callbacks
 creating, 480–483
 defined, 480
 overview of, 483
client scripts. *See also* JavaScript; jQuery
 accessibility considerations, 315
 adding to websites (practice), 504, 507
 binding to client-side events, 530–533
 calling web services from, 583–585
 creating, with script blocks, 472–475
 debugging, 396
 debugging (practice), 400
 dynamically adding, 475–478
 embedding in custom controls, 499–502, 516
 jQuery references in, 523
 overview of, 472
 referencing ASP.NET controls in, 475
 registering on page submission only, 478
 registering with ScriptManager control, 478–479

ClientFunctionName property of CustomValidator control, 236

ClientId property of controls, 475

clients

- communication with servers, 3
- overview of, 3

ClientScript property of Page object, 475

ClientScriptManager class, 475–478

ClientScriptManager object, 479

ClientScriptManager.RegisterOnSubmitStatement method, 478

client-side effects, adding to pages, 533–534

client-side events

- binding jQuery scripts to, 530–533
- binding jQuery scripts to (practice), 544

client-side navigation

- via JavaScript, 247–248
- overview of, 247

client-side state management. *See also* control state;

- view state
- overview of, 120
- vs. server-side, 121–123

code section (ASPx pages), 27

code-behind pages

- benefits of, 26
- C# sample, 25
- opening, 109
- vs. single-file pages, 23–26
- Visual Basic sample, 25

Collapse method (JavaScript), 473

collections, LINQ queries against, 629

Command event for Button control, 176

command prompt, opening, 12

CommandArgument property of Button control, 177

commands, HTTP, 5

- CONNECT, 6
- DEBUG, 6
- DELETE, 6
- GET, 3, 5, 6, 10
- HEAD, 6
- OPTIONS, 6
- POST, 6, 10
- PUT, 6
- retrieving list of, 6
- TRACE, 6

communication protocols. *See* HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)

companion media, xxviii

- installing practice tests from, xxix
- starting practice tests from, xxix

CompareValidator control, 232–233

CompareValidator.ControlToCompare property, 233

comparison operators, validating input with, 232–233

compiling websites

- overview of, 28
- precompiling, 441–442

component objects

- creating, 495–496
- overview of, 494

composite controls, 372–376

composite data-bound controls, 728

CompositeDataBoundControl class, 722

compressing session state data, 150

compressing view state data, 126

compression by servers, 5

compressionEnabled attribute, 150

concatenating LINQ query results, 639

conditional partial-page updates, 460

configuration files

- creating (practice), 36–37
- editing, 34–35
- file extension for, 33
- Machine.config, 33
- for .NET Framework 4, 34
- processing, 34
- for specific websites, 33

Configure Data Source Wizard, 688

CONNECT method, 6

connecting Web Parts

- dynamic connections, 272
- overview of, 269
- practice for, 282–286
- static connections, 269–271

ConnectionsZone control, 272

consumer Web Parts, creating, 270

Content controls, 47

content delivery networks (CDNs), 523

Content folder (MVC), 838

content pages

- attaching master pages to, 48
- control required for, 48
- controls, referencing in master pages, 51
- creating, 47

creating (practice), 54–57
dependencies on master pages, managing, 49
example of, 47
master page setting precedence, 47
overview of, 44
referencing master page properties from, 48–49, 50
run time processing of, 45
title, setting, 47
ContentPlaceHolder controls, 44, 46
ContentResult class, 853
Content-Types. *See* MIME types
ContextTypeName attribute of LinqDataSource control, 711
ContinueDestinationPageUrl property of CreateUserWizard control, 809
contracts, WCF
 configuring, 597
 defining, 598
 overview of, 594, 595
@ Control directive, 332
Control (postback) event, 105
control objects, 494
control state
 defined, 120
 implementing, 128
 overview of, 128
Control.ApplyStyleSheetSkin method, 106
controllers, MVC
 action methods, 836, 851, 853
 action methods, passing data to, 854–855
 creating (practice), 843–844
 naming convention, 851
 overview of, 834
 storage location of, 851
 template for, 852–853
 template methods, 852
Controllers folder (MVC), 838
Control.RenderingCompatibility property, 166
controls. *See* data source controls; user controls; web server controls
ControlToCompare property of CompareValidator control, 233
cookies
 adding, 130
 for anonymous user profiles, 793
 ASP.NET session state and, 129
authentication, for user name, 814
defined, 120
deleting, 131
encoding, 135
expiration, setting, 131
implementation of, 129
key values, 132
maximum size of, 132
multiple values in, 132
name, returning, 813
overview of, 129
path, returning, 813
reading, 130
scope of, 131–132
for session state, 146
for session state, disabling, 147
SSL, requiring, 813
storing data in (practice), 138–139
user resetting, enabling, 129–130
viewing, 131
Cookies method of Request object, 132
Cookies property, 130
Cookies.Add method of Response object, 130
Copy Web tool, 439–441
counting application users, 103
CreatedUser event of CreateUserWizard control, 810
CreateRole method of Roles class, 816
CreateUser method of Membership class, 815
CreateUserWizard control
 customizing, 809
 overview of, 314, 808
 user account creation page, 808–810
CreateUserWizard.ContinueDestinationPageUrl property, 809
CreateUserWizard.CreatedUser event, 810
CredentialCache object, 586
cross-page posting
 overview of, 248
 strongly typed properties and, 249
cross-table queries, 661
.css files
 adding to websites, 65–66
 adding to websites (practice), 70
 additional references on, 66
 defined, 60, 61
 example styles, 66

- .css files (*continued*)
 - HTML reference to, 66
 - overview of, 65
 - referencing in master pages, 54
 - vs. skin files, 64
 - template for, 65
- CssClass property of controls, 165
- culture
 - abbreviations for, 294
 - allowing user to set, 305–306
 - declaring, 306
- Culture property of Page object, 305
- cultures, listing for user, 306
- CurrentNode property of SiteMap class, 253
- Custom Actions editor, 437–438
- Custom Mode dialog box, on companion media, xxx
- custom setup wizard pages, 435–437
- custom validation
 - client-side, 235–238
 - example code, 236
 - overview of, 235
 - server-side, 238–240
- custom web server controls. *See also* user controls;
 - web server controls
 - adding to webpages (practice), 381–382
 - advantages of, 356
 - class definitions, 499
 - class inheritance, 356
 - code-behind file for, 382
 - composite, 372–376
 - created in stand-alone Server Control project, 364
 - creating (practice), 379–380
 - creating from existing control, 357–360
 - creating from WebControl class, 361–363
 - custom designers for, 370–371
 - default property, setting, 366, 368
 - defined, 356
 - embedding AJAX client controls as, 512–517
 - embedding client scripts in, 499–502, 516
 - HTML display, 361
 - icons, creating, 365
 - localizing properties, 368
 - markup for, 363, 369
 - namespace prefix, setting, 369
 - properties, defining, 500
 - property attributes, 367–368
 - registering, 503
 - registering client scripts for, 501
 - registering globally, 378
 - rendering display of, 357
 - templated, 377–378
 - Toolbox support, 364
 - Toolbox support (practice), 381
 - ViewState support, 360
- <customErrors> element, 392–393
- CustomValidation class, 768
- CustomValidator control
 - client-side validation, 235–238
 - overview of, 235
 - server-side validation, 238–240
- CustomValidator.ClientFunctionName property, 236

D

- DashboardController class, 865
- data contexts
 - defining, 758
 - metadata, adding, 765–768
 - partial methods and, 770
 - registering with MetaModel, 759–762
- data object methods, 697–698
- data source controls
 - for Access, 702
 - business object manipulation with, 690–693
 - code for, 699–688
 - for entity models, 703–706
 - ID, setting, 722
 - for LINQ-based data, 711–712
 - overview of, 687
 - passing parameters, 692–693
 - selecting data for, 688
 - for site navigation data, 712–713
 - templated binding, 723
 - wizard for, 688
 - for XML data, 707–710
- data type, verifying in controls, 232–233
- data validation
 - client-side, overview of, 231
 - client-side, security of, 229
 - with comparison operators, 232–233
 - custom code for. *See* custom validation
 - framework for, 229–232
 - practice for, 241–243

with regular expressions, 234–235
 requiring field entry, 232
 for sections of pages, 232
 as usability feature, 228
 for user name/password, 815
 verifying range of acceptable values, 234
 when to use, 231

DataAdapter.Fill method, 653

DataAdapter.Update method, 654

DataAnnotations class
 overview of, 850–851
 scaffolding, 860–864

database markup language files
 defined, 665
 generating, 667

database queries. *See LINQ; LINQ queries*

databases, deploying, 421–423

DataBind method of *Page* object, 346

DataBinder class, 723–724

DataBinder.Eval method, 723–724

data-bound controls
 base classes, 721
 classifications of, 721
 composite, 728
 connecting to data source, 722
 defined, 721
 hierarchical, 741–746
 interfaces supported by, 722
 simple, 724
 templated binding, 723

DataBoundControl class, 722

DataContext object, 633

DataContext.GetTable method, 672

DataContract class, 597

DataControlField object
 class hierarchy, 729
 overview of, 728

DownList control, 740

DataMember class, 597

DataObject class, 697–698

DataObjectMethod attribute, 698

DataPager control, 738

DataRelation object, 650

DataRow object, 652

DataSet objects
 comparing data in, 662–663
 joining across tables, 661

querying with LINQ. *See LINQ to DataSet*
 typed, creating, 656–658

DataSourceld attribute of *Menu* control, 254

DataTable object
 adapting data from data store, 653
 adding rows to, 652
 overview of, 650
 populating, 652–653
 saving changes to, 654
 strongly typed, 660

DataTable.Rows.Add method, 652

DataTips, pinning, 391

DataType class, 768

DateTime values, 772

DAV (Distributed Authoring and Versioning), 7

DayHeaderStyle property of *Calendar* control, 197

DayNameFormat property of *Calendar* control, 197

DayRender event of *Calendar* control, 199

DayStyle property of *Calendar* control, 197

DbDataAdapter object, 653, 654

DBML files
 defined, 665
 generating, 667

Debug attribute of @ *Page* directive, 391

DEBUG method, 6

debugging, 6. *See also* breakpoints
 AJAX applications, 409
 attaching to process, 396
 authentication for, 395
 client scripts, 396
 client scripts (practice), 400
DataTips, viewing, 391
 enabling, 390, 391
 enabling (practice), 398
 firewall configuration for, 394
 JavaScript, 410
 jQuery files, 522
 page-level, 391
 remotely, 394–396
 security considerations, 390
 in Visual Studio 2010, new features, 391–392
Web.config file for. *See Web.config transformations*
 when to turn on, 390

declarative data binding, 688

DeclarativeCatalogPart control, 263

Decrypt method of *FormsAuthentication* class, 814

DefaultButton property of *Panel* control, 205

DefaultFocus property of forms

DefaultFocus property of forms, 316
DefaultModel.RegisterContext method, 760
DefaultProperty attribute for control properties, 366
DefaultValue attribute for control properties, 368
DELETE method, 6
DeleteMethod attribute of ObjectDataSource control, 693–694
DeleteOnSubmit method, 672
DeleteRole method of Roles class, 816
DeleteUser method of Membership class, 815
dependencies, cache, 77
deploying websites. *See also* publishing web applications; Web Setup Projects
with Copy Web tool, 439–441
with custom setup pages, 435–437
to deployment packages, 425
precompiling, 441–442
with Web Deployment Projects, 425–426
deployment packages, 425
Description attribute for control properties, 368
DescriptionUrl property of Image control, 190, 314
descriptive error messages, 317
design-time view of controls, customizing, 370–371
DetailsView control, 731–732
 practice exercise, 748–752
 sorting data, 731
dialog boxes, for custom setup pages, 437
digital signatures, 122
directing users to new webpage. *See* redirection
disability accessibility. *See* accessibility
disabling controls, 165
disabling themes for specific pages/controls, 67
Display class, 768
DisplayAfter property of UpdateProgress control, 462
DisplayFormat class, 768
DisplayMode property of WebPartManager control, 267
Distributed Authoring and Versioning (DAV), 7
DLL files, embedding (practice), 444
DNS resolution, 5
DocumentSource property of Xml control, 214
DOM elements
 AJAX client controls for, 496–498
 referencing in jQuery, 524–525
Domain property of HttpCookie class, 132
downloadable content for book, xxix
DropDownList control, 173–175
 example code, 725
 vs. ListBox control, 726
parent class, 722
populating, 173
DropDownList method of HtmlHelper class, 858
DropDownList.SelectedIndexChanged event, 175
Dynamic Data
 adding to existing website, 777
 advantages of, 755
 classes, 762
 creating website, 756–758
 creating website (practice), 780–781
 custom page templates, 775–776
 custom routing, 763–765
 CustomPages folder, 775
 enabling, 778–779
 field template user controls, creating, 773
 field templates, 772
 field templates, customizing, 772–773
 folder contents, 758
 ListDetails.aspx file, 764
 metadata annotation classes, 768–769
 overview of, 755
 route table, editing, 764
 structure of, 756–758
 template user interface, 761
 templates for, 756
 URI structure, editing, 764
 validation, 769–771
dynamic Web Part connections, 272
dynamic website compilation, 28
dynamically adding client scripts, 475–478
dynamically changing master pages
 practice for, 57–58
 process for, 52–53
dynamically changing themes
 practice for, 72
 process for, 67–68

E

eBook version of training kit, xxviii
ECMAScript, 455
e-commerce page, accessibility (practice), 322–324
Editable class, 768
Editor method of HtmlHelper class, 858
EditorPart control, 263
EditorZone control, 263

EDMX files, 672–674. *See also* Entity Framework (EF); LINQ to Entities

EF (Entity Framework). *See* Entity Framework (EF)

effects, adding to pages, 533–534

email addresses, searching users by, 815

email servers, configuring, 812

emailing URLs, 134

embedding images in controls, 365

EmptyResult class, 853

EnableCaching attribute

- of ObjectDataSource control, 697
- of SqlDataSource control, 701

EnableClientScript property of validation controls, 231, 315

Enabled property of controls, 165

EnableDelete attribute of EntityDataSource control, 706

EnableInsert attribute of EntityDataSource control, 706

EnableSessionState page directive, 146

EnableTheming attribute, 67

EnableTheming property for controls, 67, 165

EnableUpdate attribute of EntityDataSource control, 706

EnableViewState property for controls, 125–126, 165

Encode mode for Literal control, 169

encoding data in Label controls, 168

Encrypt method of FormsAuthentication class, 814

encrypting view state, 124

End event, 101

endpoints, WCF

- defining, 602
- overview of, 594

EndProcessRequest method, 558, 565

endRequest event of PageRequestManager class, 494

Entity Framework (EF). *See also* EntityDataSource control; LINQ to Entities

- data model class inheritance, 675
- data model, creating, 672–674
- data model, creating (practice), 676–678, 715
- defined, 627
- vs. LINQ to SQL, 664

EntityDataSource control

- adding to default.aspx page, 778
- Boolean attributes, 706
- configuring, 703
- custom queries, 704
- editing data with, 706
- filtering results of, 705
- object collections, specifying, 705
- ordering results of, 705
- paging data with, 706
- parameters, defining, 705–706
- practice exercise, 716–719
- projections with, 704
- returning specific data with, 704
- sorting data with, 706
- updating data with, 706

EntitySetName attribute of EntityDataSource control, 704

EnumDataType class, 768

enumerations, 490–491

errata, submitting, xxxi

Error event, 101

error handling

- of partial-page updates, 462
- by servers, 4

error pages

- error-specific, setting, 393–394
- error-specific, setting (practice), 399–400
- for remote clients only, 392
- site-level, setting, 392–393

ErrorMessage property for validation controls, 230, 317

Eval method of DataBinder class, 723–724

event handlers

- configuring (practice), 114–116
- creating, in C#, 111
- creating, in Visual Basic .NET, 109–111
- creating, in Visual Studio, 109
- for user controls, 333, 350, 352

event handling

- for application events, 101–102
- for webpage events, 104–106

events

- ButtonClick, 107, 111, 176
- Button.Command, 176
- Calendar.DayRender, 199
- Calendar.SelectionChanged, 199
- Calendar.VisibleMonthChanged, 199
- Control (postback), 105
- CreateUserWizard.CreatedUser, 810
- CustomValidator.ServerValidate, 238
- DbDataAdapter.RowUpdated, 654
- DropDownList.SelectedIndexChanged, 175, 725
- End, 101
- Error, 101
- ImageButton.Click, 191

events (*continued*)
 ImageMap.Click, 193
 Init, 105
 InitComplete, 105
 LoadComplete, 105
 Login.LoginError, 812
 LogRequest, 101
 MigrateAnonymous, 795
 PageRequestManager.beginRequest, 494
 PageRequestManager.endRequest, 494
 PageRequestManager.InitializeRequest, 494
 PageRequestManager.pageLoaded, 494
 PageRequestManager.pageLoading, 494
 PasswordRecovery.AnswerLookupError, 812
 PasswordRecovery.UserLookupError, 812
 PostLogRequest, 101
 PreInit, 105
 PreLoad, 105
 PreRender, 105
 SaveStateComplete, 106
 Session_Start, 148
 Start, 101
 Sys.Application.Load, 493
 TextBox.TextChanged, 171
 Timer.Tick, 463, 469
 Unload, 106
 ValidatePage, 85–86

expiration, cache, 75, 78, 79

Expires property, 131

explicit localization, 298

Expressions property for controls, 301–302

ExtenderControl class, 502

F

fade-in effects, scripting, 523–524, 533–534

feedback for book, xxxii

Fiddler browser add-on, 11

field template controls, 772

field templates for Dynamic Data websites, 772
 customizing, 772–773
 user controls, creating, 773

fields, hidden
 defined, 120

HTTP POST method for, 129

overview of, 128–129
 storing data in (practice), 137–138

FieldTemplateUserControl class, 772

file authorization, 819–820

FileBytes property of FileUpload control, 202

FileContent property of FileUpload control, 202

FileResult class, 853

file-system-based websites
 creating, 17
 creating (practice), 30–31
 on servers, 18
 with WebDAV, 18–19

FileUpload control
 example code, 203
 HTML generated by, 202
 maximum file size, 203
 overview of, 202
 properties, 202
 saving files with, 203
 security considerations, 203

FileUpload.SaveAs method, 203

Fill method of DataAdapter object, 653

FilterAttribute class, 856

FilterExpression attribute
 of ObjectDataSource control, 694–695
 of SqlDataSource control, 701

filtering
 EntityDataSource control data, 705
 jQuery functions, 526, 527–529
 LINQ queries, 634
 site map data, in SiteMapDataSource control,
 713–714
 XML, with XmlDataSource control, 710

FindControl method of Master object, 51

FindUsersByEmail method of Membership class, 815

FindUsersByName method of Membership class, 815

FindUsersInRole method of Roles class, 816

Firebug plug-in for Firefox, 410

Firefox web browser, 410

firewall, debugging, 394

FirstDayOfWeek property of Calendar control, 197

Focus method of controls, 231

folder authorization, 819–820

Font property of controls, 165

font size, accessibility considerations, 315

ForeColor property of controls, 165

foreign language support. *See globalization; resource files*

<form> tag, 9

forms. *See also ASPX pages*

- accessibility considerations, 316–317
- adding controls to, 106–107
- example of, 9–10
- focus, setting default, 316, 323
- GET command, 10
- hiding, 205
- POST method, 10–11
- postbacks, 116–118
- submitting data from, 9–11
- tab order, 316
- width/height, best practices, 304

FormsAuthentication class, 813–814

FormsAuthentication.Authenticate method, 814

FormsAuthentication.Decrypt method, 814

FormsAuthentication.Encrypt method, 814

FormsAuthentication.FormsCookieName property, 813

FormsAuthentication.FormsCookiePath property, 813

FormsAuthentication.GetAuthCookie method, 814

FormsAuthentication.GetRedirectUrl method, 814

FormsAuthentication.HashPasswordForStoringInConfigFile method, 814

FormsAuthentication.RedirectFromLoginPage method, 814

FormsAuthentication.RenewTicketIfOld method, 814

FormsAuthentication.RequireSSL property, 813

FormsAuthentication.SetAuthCookie method, 814

FormsAuthentication.SignOut method, 814

FormsAuthentication.SlidingExpiration property, 814

FormsCookieName property of FormsAuthentication class, 813

FormsCookiePath property of FormsAuthentication class, 813

FormView control

- overview of, 167, 733–734
- template definitions, 733

Front Page Server Extensions, 20

front-end interface, 3. *See also web browsers*

FTP-based website projects, 15

- creating, 21
- when to use, 21

G

GenerateEmptyAlternateText property of Image control, 190

GeneratePassword method of Membership class, 815

GET method, 3, 5

- description of, 6
- example of, 10
- when to use, 10

GetAllRoles method of Roles class, 816

GetAllUsers method of Membership class, 815

GetAuthCookie method of FormsAuthentication class, 814

GetCallbackResult method, 481

GetGlobalResourceObject method, 303

GetLocalResourceObject method, 303

GetNumberOfUsersOnline method of Membership class, 815

GetRedirectUrl method of FormsAuthentication class, 814

GetRolesForUser method of Roles class, 816

GetSchedule method of Calendar control, 201

GetScriptDescriptors method, 500, 514

GetScriptReferences method, 501, 514

GetTable method of DataContext object, 672

GetUser method of Membership class, 815

GetUserNameByEmail method of Membership class, 815

GetValidators method of Page object, 232

Global Application Class. *See Global.asax file*

global assembly cache, 29

Global namespace (AJAX Library), 485

global resources

- accessing programmatically, 303
- control properties, attaching, 301–302
- creating, 300–301
- defined, 293
- folder for, 300
- non-string, creating, 301
- overview of, 300

global themes

- interaction with application themes, 63
- location of, 63
- overview of, 63

Global.asax file

Global.asax file
base class for, 100
creating, 101
example of, 102
vs. HTTP modules, 570

globalization. *See also* resource files
for AJAX Library, 484
culture overview, 294
HTML layout best practices, 304
importance of, 292
localizing text, 297
practice for, 307–310

Google search results, and website performance, 42

graphics. *See also* Image control
aligning, 190
alternate text, setting, 190, 314
embedding in controls, 365
handling requests for, 554, 556–557
handling requests for (practice), 571–573
hot spots, 193–196
in themes, 65

GridView control
binding to database, 465
formatting, 730–731
parent class, 722
practice exercise, 748–752
structure of, 728
styles, 730–731

GridViewRow object, 728

grouped launch conditions, 432

grouping
LINQ query results, 635
profile properties, 794
validation controls, 232

H

hardware requirements for practice exercises, xxviii
hashing data
overview of, 122
passwords, 814

HashPasswordForStoringInConfigFile method of Forms-Authentication class, 814

HEAD method, 6

HeaderText attribute of WebPartZone control, 264–265

heading tags, vs. font sizes, 315
health monitoring
configuring, 413–414
listeners, enabling, 413
overview of, 412
web event classes for, 412–413

Height property of controls, 165

hidden fields
defined, 120
HTTP POST method for, 129
overview of, 128–129
storing data in (practice), 137–138

Hidden method of HtmlHelper class, 858

HiddenField control, 128

hierarchical data-bound controls, 741–746

HierarchicalDataBoundControl class, 722, 741–746

HomeController.About method, 840

HomeController.Index method, 840

HorizontalAlignment property of Panel control, 205

HostingEnvironment class, 100

hot spots
alternate text, setting, 193
class inheritance, 193
destination URL, setting, 193
example code, 194
keyboard shortcuts, 193
properties, 193
target window, setting, 193

HotSpotMode property, 193, 194–196

HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)
browser display of, 5
hidden fields. *See* hidden fields
layout best practices, 304
raw, adding to page. *See* Literal control
style sheet reference in, 66

HTML character entity reference replacement, 167

HTML controls. *See also* web server controls
creating in Source view, 178–179
creating in Visual Studio designer, 179
overview of, 177
vs. web server controls, 180
when to use, 178

HtmlEncode method
of HttpUtility object, 168
of Server object, 126, 135, 168

HtmlHelper class, 858–859

HtmlHelper.ActionLink method, 858

HtmlHelper.BeginForm method, 858
HtmlHelper.CheckBox method, 858
HtmlHelper.DropDownList method, 858
HtmlHelper.Editor method, 858
HtmlHelper.Hidden method, 858
HtmlHelper.Label method, 858
HtmlHelper.ListBox method, 858
HtmlHelper.Password method, 858
HtmlHelper.RadioButton method, 858
HtmlHelper.RenderAction method, 858
HtmlHelper.RenderPartial method, 858
HtmlHelper.RouteLink method, 858
HtmlHelper.TextArea method, 859
HtmlHelper.TextBox method, 859
HtmlHelper.Validate method, 859
HtmlHelper.ValidationMessage method, 859
HtmlHelper.ValidationSummary method, 859
HtmlTable control, 187
HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)
monitoring (practice), 13
overview of, 5
port assigned to, 3
status codes, 3, 8
versions, 5
HTTP forms. *See forms*
HTTP handlers
application extension mapping, 556–557
.ashx file extension, 557
asynchronous, 558
asynchronous, creating, 558–564
creating, 553, 554
creating (practice), 571–573
defined, 552
file location, 554
for image requests, 554
for image requests (practice), 571–573
importance of understanding, 552
overview of, 553
registering with IIS, 553–556
reusing, 553
webpages as, 564–566
HTTP methods, 5
CONNECT, 6
DEBUG, 6
DELETE, 6
GET, 3, 5, 6, 10
HEAD, 6
OPTIONS, 6
POST, 6, 10
PUT, 6
retrieving list of, 6
TRACE, 6
HTTP modules
creating, 566
defined, 552
example code, 567
function of, 566
vs. Global.asax file, 570
registering, 566, 569–570
HTTP requests
methods, 5
Request object, 7
URLs, 5
website name in, 6
HTTP responses
components of, 9
Response object, 7
status codes, 8
HTTP Secure (HTTPS)
overview of, 3
port assigned to, 3
publishing web applications via, 424
HTTP status codes, 3, 8
decimal point values in, 394
list of, 393
setting error pages for, 393–394
setting error pages for (practice), 399–400
HttpApplication class
overview of, 101–102, 566
resource request processing, 567
HttpApplicationState class, 103, 144
HTTP-based website projects, 15
creating, 19
prerequisites for, 19
HttpCookie object, 130
HttpCookie.Domain property, 132
HttpPost attribute for action methods, 854
HTTPS (HTTP Secure)
overview of, 3
port assigned to, 3
publishing web applications via, 424
HttpSessionState class, 145
HttpValidationStatus attribute, 85–87

HttpWatch browser add-on, 11
HyperLink control, page navigation with, 247–248
hyperlink text, accessibility of, 316
Hyperlink.NavigateUrl property, 247–248
Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). *See also* HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)

I

ICallbackEventHandler, 481
ICallbackEventHandler.RaiseCallbackEvent method, 480
icons, for custom web server controls, 365
IEnumerable interface, 625–628
IHttpAsyncHandler interface, 558–566
IHttpHandler interface, 553, 554, 571
IHttpModule interface, 566
IIS (Internet Information Services). *See also* servers
application life cycle on, 100
checking version before deployment, 431
configuring request forwarding, 556–557
HTTP status codes in, 394
installing ASP.NET 4 on, 442–443
registering HTTP handlers with, 553–556
Image control, 65
aligning, 190
clickable. *See* ImageButton control
example code, 190
function of, 189
properties, 190
settings inheritance, 189
syntax of, 189
when to use, 189
image maps. *See* ImageButton control; ImageMap control
image MIME type, 9
ImageAlign property of Image control, 190
Image.AlternateText property, 190, 314
ImageButton control, 177
accessibility considerations, 315
example code, 191
vs. ImageMap control, 192
overview of, 191
properties, 191
settings inheritance, 189
ImageButton.Click event, 191
Image.DescriptionUrl property, 314

ImageMap control
HTML generated by, 192
vs. ImageButton control, 192
settings inheritance, 189, 193
ImageMap.Click event, 193
images. *See also* Image control
aligning, 190
alternate text, setting, 190, 314
embedding in controls, 365
handling requests for, 554, 556–557
handling requests for (practice), 571–573
hot spots, 193–196
in themes, 65
ImageUrl property
of Image control, 190
of ImageButton control, 191
 tag, 189
impersonation
overview of, 821
when to use, 822
implicit localization, 297–298
Index method of HomeController class, 840
inheritance, class
of AJAX Library, 490, 491, 498
of AJAX server controls, 458
of custom web server controls, 356
of hot spots, 193
of master pages, 44
of user controls, 331
in WCF Data Services, 608
Init event, 105
InitComplete event, 105
InitializeCulture method of Page object, 305, 307
InitializeRequest event of PageRequestManager class, 494
InitialValue property of RequiredFieldValidator control, 232
InProc mode for session state, 148
input validation
client-side, overview of, 231
client-side, security of, 229
with comparison operators, 232–233
custom code for. *See* custom validation framework for, 229–232
practice for, 241–243
with regular expressions, 234–235
requiring field entry, 232
for sections of pages, 232

as usability feature, 228
 for user name/passwords, 815
 verifying range of acceptable values, 234
 when to use, 231

Insert method of Cache object, 76–77

InsertMethod attribute of ObjectDataSource control, 693–694

InsertOnSubmit method, 671

InsertQuery property of SqlDataSource control, 466

installing ASP.NET on IIS, 442–443

instant messaging, sending URLs via, 134

integer values in code, 490–491

IntelliSense
 including in library, 495
 user properties, 337–338

international support. *See* globalization; resource files

Internet Information Services (IIS). *See* IIS (Internet Information Services); servers

IsUserInRole method of Roles class, 816

IsValid property of Page object, 232

J

JavaScript. *See also* AJAX; client scripts; jQuery
 in assemblies, referencing, 478
 class references in, 492
 connecting Button controls to, 474–475
 constructors, defining as functions, 508
 creating .js files for, 474
 debugging, 396, 410
 debugging (practice), 400
 dynamically adding, 475–478
 history of, 471–472
 including with script blocks, 472–475
 namespaces, 486–487
 referencing ASP.NET controls in, 475
 referencing master page controls in, 476
 registering, with ScriptManager control, 479
 registering events, 493
 unregistering events, 493
 in web server controls, 456

JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) services
 overview of, 603
 transforming LINQ queries into, 640–641

JavaScriptResult class, 853

joining data with LINQ, 636

jQuery. *See also* JavaScript

AJAX methods, 538–539
 base function, 524
 binding to client-side events, 530–533
 binding to client-side events (practice), 544
 calling web service with, 535–537
 CDN hosting, 523
 chaining functions, 527
 effects and animations with, 533–534
 file location, 522
 files for, 522
 filtering functions, 526, 527–529
 manipulation functions, 529–530
 overview of, 456, 520
 referencing, 523
 referencing (practice), 543
 search characters, 525
 selection manipulation, 529–530
 selectors, 524
 selectors, advanced, 524–525
 selectors, examples of, 525–526
 shortcut methods, 532–533
 syntax, 524
 traversing functions, 526, 527–529
 turning off effects, 534
 uses for, 521–522
 version, 522
 webpage callbacks with, 537
 website for, 522
 widespread use of, 520
 writing script in, 523–524

.js files. *See* client scripts; JavaScript

JSON (JavaScript Object Notation)
 overview of, 603
 transforming LINQ queries into, 640–641

JsonResult class, 853

K

Key class, 769
key files, 442
 keyboard accessibility, 316–317
 keyboard shortcuts
 for accessibility, 316–317
 for hot spots, 193
 for Label controls, 167
 specifying in web controls, 166

L

- Label control, 107, 297
 - adding (practice), 219
 - adding to Calendar control, 199
 - associating with TextBox control, 167
 - associating with user input control, 167
 - as caption for user input control, 167
 - defining access keys with, 316
 - vs. Literal control, 169
 - security and, 168
 - when to use, 167
- Label method of HtmlHelper class, 858
- LabeledTextBox control, 369
- language
 - abbreviations for, 294
 - allowing user to set, 305–306
 - allowing user to set (practice), 307
 - setting in web browser, 299
- Language-Integrated Query (LINQ). See LINQ (Language-Integrated Query)
- launch conditions. *See also* Web Setup Projects
 - adding, 431
 - adding (practice), 445
 - Boolean operators, 432
 - configuring, 431
 - grouping, 432
 - list of, 431
 - overview of, 429
 - properties, 434
 - syntax for, 431–432
- Launch Conditions editor, 429
 - Launch Conditions branch, 430
 - search conditions, adding, 430–431
 - Search Target Machine branch, 430
- lesson reviews, xxx
- License Agreement template, 437
- license agreements, deploying with, 435
- link text, accessibility of, 316
- LinkButton control
 - accessibility considerations, 315
 - overview of, 177
- LINQ (Language-Integrated Query)
 - advantages of, 625
 - data providers, 627
 - IEnumerable interface, 625–627, 628
 - overview of, 625
 - projections, 634
- LINQ data sources
 - defining, 628–633
 - joining, 636
 - merging, 638
- LINQ keywords, 628
 - Descending, 634
 - From, 633
 - Group, 635
 - Join, 635
 - Order By, 634
 - Select, 634, 637–638, 639
 - Where, 634
- LINQ queries
 - anonymous types, 637–638
 - against collection classes, 629
 - concatenating results, 639
 - executing, 626–627
 - filtering results of, 634
 - grouping results of, 635
 - iterating over, 626–627
 - joining data, 636
 - JSON format, 640–641
 - keywords in, 625
 - mapping to types, 637–638
 - mathematical operations on, 639
 - merging data, 638
 - against .NET arrays, 628
 - operators, 662
 - practice exercise, 642–646
 - range variables, 633
 - selections, 633–634
 - sorting results of, 634
 - syntax of, 626
 - transforming data with, 639–641
 - typed syntax, 626
 - var keyword, 626
 - against XML data, 630, 639
- LINQ to DataSet
 - cross-table queries, 661
 - defining schema, 650
 - example code, 659
 - overview of, 649–650
 - populating DataSet, 652–653
 - querying with, 658–659
 - querying with typed DataSets, 660
 - saving database changes, 654
 - singleton queries, 659
 - typed DataSets, creating, 654

LINQ to Entities, 664. *See also* Entity Framework (EF)
 class inheritance, 675
 data model, creating, 672–674
 data model, creating (practice), 676–678
 data model, editing, 674
 overview of, 672
 querying data with, 675
 querying data with (practice), 678–680
LINQ to Objects, 627
LINQ to SQL
 and ADO.NET, 665
 deleting data with, 672
 enabling, 664–665
 inserting data with, 671
 vs. LINQ to Entities, 664
 O/R mapping, 665–670
 overview of, 631–633, 664
 querying data with, 670–671
 rapid adoption of, 649
 updating data with, 672
LinqDataSource control, 711–712
ListBox control, 175
 configuring, 726
 vs. DropDownList control, 726
 example code, 726
 when to use, 175
ListBox method of HtmlHelper class, 858
ListControl class, 722, 724
listeners, enabling for monitoring, 413
lists, bulleted, 727
ListView control, 736–738
Literal control
 vs. Label control, 169
 modes for, 169
Load event, 105
Load event of Sys.Application object, 493
LoadComplete event, 105
LoadControl method of Page class, 339–340
loading controls dynamically, 339–340
local resources
 creating manually, 295
 defined, 293
 editing, 296
 folder for, 293
 generating, 295
 naming, 293

Localizable attribute for control properties, 368
Localize control, 297
localizing text, 297. *See also* globalization; resource files
LocalSqlServer connection string, 790
locking objects, 103
Login control, 167, 808, 811
Login.aspx page, 810
LoginError event of Login control, 812
Login.LoginError event, 812
LoginName control, 808
LoginStatus control, 808
LoginView control, 808
logon controls, 807–808
logon pages
 overview of, 810
 password recovery, 811–812
 redirect URLs, returning, 814
 redirecting user to original request, 814
logos, accessibility, 323
LogRequest event, 101

M

MAC (message authentication code), 124
Machine.config files
 authorization in, 818
 impersonation settings, 821
 overview of, 33
manipulation functions in jQuery, 529–530
master pages
 advantages of, 43, 44
 AJAX support and, 459
 attaching to content pages, 48
 class derivation, when multiple, 50
 class inheritance, 44
 control required for, 48
 controls, referencing from content pages, 51
 creating, 45–46
 creating (practice), 54–57
 dependencies on content pages, managing, 49
 dynamically changing, 52–53
 dynamically changing (practice), 57–58
 example of, 45–46
 file extension for, 44
 InitializeCulture event and, 307

Master.FindControl method

master pages (*continued*)

- JavaScript references to controls in, 476
 - multiple, 50
 - in MVC, 857
 - nesting, 51–52
 - overview of, 44–45
 - public properties in, 49–50
 - referencing properties from content pages, 48–49, 50
 - reloading automatically after changes, 57
 - run time processing of, 45
 - selecting for ASPX pages, 47
 - settings inheritance, 47
 - style sheet reference in, 54
 - <title> tag, 46
 - varying by situation, 52–53
- Master.FindControl method, 51
- MasterPage class, 44
- MasterPageFile property, 48
- MasterType declaration, 50
- mathematical operations, on LINQ query results, 639
- MaximumValue property of RangeValidator control.
 See input validation
- MaxLength property of TextBox control, 171
- MDF files, 702
- Membership class, 815
- Membership.CreateUser method, 815
- Membership.DeleteUser method, 815
- Membership.FindUsersByEmail method, 815
- Membership.FindUsersByName method, 815
- Membership.GeneratePassword method, 815
- Membership.GetAllUsers method, 815
- Membership.GetNumberOfUsersOnline method, 815
- Membership.GetUser method, 815
- Membership.GetUserNameByEmail method, 815
- Membership.UpdateUser method, 815
- Membership.ValidateUser method, 815
- Menu control, 254, 745–746
 - adding (practice), 258
 - data source, configuring, 746
 - example code, 254, 746
 - skipping links with, 314
- merging data sources in LINQ, 638
- message authentication code (MAC), 124
- meta tags
 - resourcekey attribute, 297–298
 - retrieving, 6

metadata

- adding to data contexts, 765–768
 - annotation classes, 768–769
 - validating, 769–771
- MetadataType class, 769
- MetaModel of Dynamic Data website
 - overview of, 757
 - registering data contexts with, 759–762
- methods, ASP.NET
 - BeginProcessRequest, 559, 565
 - Cache.Insert, 76–77
 - Calendar.GetSchedule, 201
 - ClientScriptManager.RegisterClientScriptBlock, 480
 - ClientScriptManager.RegisterOnSubmitStatement, 478
 - Control.ApplyStyleSheetSkin, 106
 - DataAdapter.Fill, 653
 - DataAdapter.Update, 654
 - DataBinder.Bind, 724
 - DataBinder.Eval, 723–724
 - DataContext.GetTable, 672
 - Datatable.Rows.Add, 652
 - DefaultModel.RegisterContext, 760
 - EndProcessRequest, 558, 565
 - FileUpload.SaveAs, 203
 - FormsAuthentication.Authenticate, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.Decrypt, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.Encrypt, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.GetAuthCookie, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.GetRedirectUrl, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.HashPasswordForStoringIn-
 ConfigFile, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.RedirectFromLoginPage, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.RenewTicketIfOld, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.SetAuthCookie, 814
 - FormsAuthentication.SignOut, 814
 - GetCallbackResult, 481
 - GetGlobalResourceObject, 303
 - GetLocalResourceObject, 303
 - GetScriptDescriptors, 500, 514
 - GetScriptReferences, 501, 514
 - HomeController.About, 840
 - HomeController.Index, 840
 - HtmlHelper.ActionLink, 858
 - HtmlHelper.BeginForm, 858
 - HtmlHelper.CheckBox, 858
 - HtmlHelper.DropDownList, 858
 - HtmlHelper.Editor, 858

HtmlHelper.Hidden, 858
HtmlHelper.Label, 858
HtmlHelper.ListBox, 858
HtmlHelper.Password, 858
HtmlHelper.RadioButton, 858
HtmlHelper.RenderAction, 858
HtmlHelper.RenderPartial, 858
HtmlHelper.RouteLink, 858
HtmlHelper.TextArea, 859
HtmlHelper.TextBox, 859
HtmlHelper.Validate, 859
HtmlHelper.ValidationMessage, 859
HtmlHelper.ValidationSummary, 859
ICallbackEventHandler.RaiseCallbackEvent, 480
Master.FindControl, 51
Membership.CreateUser, 815
Membership.DeleteUser, 815
Membership.FindUsersByEmail, 815
Membership.FindUsersByName, 815
Membership.GeneratePassword, 815
Membership.GetAllUsers, 815
Membership.GetNumberOfUsersOnline, 815
Membership.GetUser, 815
Membership.GetUserNameByEmail, 815
Membership.UpdateUser, 815
Membership.ValidateUser, 815
MyServerCall, 482–483
Namespace.ClassName, 487
OnInit, 128
Page_PreInit, 58
Page.ClientScript.RegisterClientScriptBlock, 475
Page.DataBind, 346
Page.GetValidators, 232
Page.InitializeCulture, 305
Page.LoadControl, 339–340
Page.Render, 106
Page.Validate, 230–231
ProcessRequest, 553, 554, 572
Profile.Save, 796
registerClass, 490, 510
registerNamespace, 487
RegisterRoutes, 760
RemoveAttributes(), 421
Response.Cache, 84
Response.Redirect, 250–251
Response.WriteSubstitution, 84
Roles.AddUserToRole, 816
Roles.CreateRole, 816
Roles.DeleteRole, 816
Roles.FindUsersInRole, 816
Roles.GetAllRoles, 816
Roles.GetRolesForUser, 816
Roles.IsUserInRole, 816
Roles.RemoveUserFromRole, 816
Server.HtmlEncode, 126, 135
Server.Transfer, 57, 250–251
StartAsync, 559
Sys.Application.notifyScriptLoaded, 492
Sys.Component.create, 498
TextBox.Render, 357
Trace.Write, 408
Type.callBaseMethod, 495
Type.registerEnum, 490
View.SetActiveView, 208
WebControl.Render, 361
WebControl.RenderBeginTag, 361
WebControl.RenderChildren, 361
WebControl.RenderContents, 361
methods, HTTP, 5
 CONNECT, 6
 DEBUG, 6
 DELETE, 6
 GET, 3, 5, 6, 10
 HEAD, 6
 OPTIONS, 6
 POST, 6, 10
 PUT, 6
 retrieving list of, 6
 TRACE, 6
methods, jQuery, 532–533
Microsoft Access. *See* Access
Microsoft AJAX Library
 browser compatibility, 484
 class inheritance, 490, 491, 498
 client objects, 494
 creating classes in, 487, 492
 enumerations, 490–491
 features and benefits, 484
 files comprising, 484
 functions, overriding, 491
 globalization support, 484
 interfaces, 491
 interfaces, defining, 490
 namespaces, 485–486

- Microsoft AJAX Library (*continued*)
 - overview of, 456
 - properties, naming, 488
 - pushing to client, 458
 - reference for, 486
 - referencing, 495
 - referencing (practice), 508
 - registering classes with, 490, 498
 - registering classes with (practice), 505, 510
 - registering events, 493
 - registering interfaces with, 491
 - unregistering events, 493
 - uses for, 486
 - Microsoft certified professional program, xxxi
 - Microsoft .NET Framework 4. *See* .NET Framework 4
 - Microsoft Network Monitor, 11, 388
 - Microsoft Press website, xxxi
 - Microsoft SQL Server Profiler, 388
 - Microsoft Visual Basic. *See* Visual Basic
 - Microsoft Visual C#. *See* C#
 - Microsoft Visual Studio 2010. *See* Visual Studio 2010
 - MicrosoftAjax.js, 484
 - MicrosoftAjaxWebForms.js, 484
 - middle-tier objects, 690–693. *See also* ObjectData-
 - Source control
 - MigrateAnonymous event, 795
 - migrating anonymous user profiles, 795
 - MIME types
 - defining, 573
 - list of, 9
 - processing of, 9
 - syntax of, 9
 - MinimumValue property of RangeValidator control.
 - See* input validation
 - Model.IsValid property, 851
 - Models folder (MVC), 838
 - model-view controller (MVC). *See also* MVC controllers
 - action filters, 856
 - action methods, 840
 - advantages of, 832
 - application areas, 838–839
 - application structure, 837–838
 - architecture of, 833–834
 - area mapping, 839
 - HtmlHelper class, 858–859
 - master pages in, 857
 - model, 834
 - model, creating custom, 848
 - namespaces, 839
 - overview of, 831, 832
 - partially generated model, 849–850
 - placeholders, 867
 - project template folders, 838
 - registering routes, 867
 - request life cycle, 834–835
 - route constraints, 868
 - route handling, preventing, 868–869
 - route parameters, 867
 - route segments, 867
 - routing in, 835–836
 - URL patterns, 867
 - validating model, 850–851
 - web application, creating (practice), 842–843,
 - 870–871
- monitoring. *See also* health monitoring
 - application users, 103
 - HTTP (practice), 13
 - msvsmon.exe, 394–396
- Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) types
 - defining, 573
 - list of, 9
 - processing of, 9
 - syntax of, 9
- MultiView control. *See also* View control
 - example code, 208
 - overview of, 207
- MVC (model-view controller)
 - action filters, 856
 - action methods, 840
 - advantages of, 832
 - application areas, 838–839
 - application structure, 837–838
 - architecture of, 833–834
 - area mapping, 839
 - HtmlHelper class, 858–859
 - master pages in, 857
 - model, 834
 - model, creating custom, 848
 - namespaces, 839
 - overview of, 831, 832
 - partially generated model, 849–850
 - placeholders, 867
 - project template folders, 838
 - registering routes, 867

request life cycle, 834–835
 route constraints, 868
 route handling, preventing, 868–869
 route parameters, 867
 route segments, 867
 routing in, 835–836
 URL patterns, 867
 validating model, 850–851
 web application, creating (practice), 842–843,
 870–871

MVC controllers
 action methods, 836, 851, 853
 action methods, passing data to, 854–855
 creating (practice), 843–844, 871–875
 naming convention, 851
 overview of, 834
 storage location of, 851
 template for, 852–853

MVC views
 @ Page directive, 857
 class inheritance, 857
 creating, 856–857
 markup for, 857
 overview of, 834
 partial, creating, 865–866
 passing data to, 855
 strongly typed, 859–860

MyServerCall method, 482–483

N

Namespace.ClassName method, 487
 namespaces
 adding classes to, 487–488
 conflicts, 518
 defined, 486
 defining, 487
 in IntelliSense, 486
 for MVC areas, 839
 registering, 504
 setting prefixes, 369
 for web services, 578–579
 naming containers, 340
 binding to templated layout, 346
 defining, 343
 NavigateUrl property, 193

NavigateUrl property of HyperLink control, 247–248
 navigation. *See page navigation; site navigation*
 navigation controls, 254
 navigation links, skipping, 314
 nesting master pages, 51–52
 .NET arrays, LINQ queries against, 628
 .NET Framework 4
 configuration file changes, 34
 installing, 442–443

Network Monitor
 HTTP monitoring (practice), 13
 overview of, 388

NetworkCredentials class, 586

NextMonthText property of Calendar control, 197
 NextPrevFormat property of Calendar control, 198
 NextPrevStyle property of Calendar control, 198
 nodes, in TreeViews
 expanding, 744
 overview of, 741–742

notifyScriptLoaded method of Sys.Application object, 492

NoWrap property, avoiding, 304

O

ObjectContext object, 675
 ObjectDataSource control
 binding to web control, 691
 caching, 697
 connecting to classes with, 690
 data manipulation with, 693–694
 DataObject class for, 697–698
 deleting data with, 693–694
 filtering, 694–695
 inserting data with, 693–694
 interfaces supported by, 692
 paging data with, 695–697
 parameters for, 692–693
 selecting data with, 690–691
 sorting data with, 695–697
 stateless nature of, 690
 TypeName attribute, 690–691
 updating data with, 693–694

OData (Open Data Protocol) services
 creating, 607–611
 specification, 609

OnInit method

OnInit method, 128
Open Data Protocol (OData)
 creating, 607–611
 specification, 609
Open Web Site dialog box, 440
OperationContract class, 597
OPTIONS method, 6
O/R mapping, 665–670
ordered lists, 727
OtherMonthDayStyle property of Calendar control, 198
OutputCache directive, 82–83, 84

P

Package/Publish SQL dialog box, 421
packaging websites for deployment, 425
@ Page directive
 Debug attribute, 391
 MVC views and, 857
page directives (ASPx pages), 27
page hierarchy. *See* site maps
page load time, 42, 80–81, 558. *See also* caching
page navigation. *See also* site navigation
 with browser redirect, 250–251
 client-side, 247–248
 methods for, 246–247
 with server-side transfers, 251
 weighing necessity of, 246
page output caching
 enabling (practice), 88–90
 overview of, 75, 80
 profiles, creating, 87
 programmatically applying, 84
 rendering time and, 80–81
Page_PreInit method, 58
page processing life cycle, 103–112
page refreshes, limiting, 455
Page Speed, 388
page validation, on Button control, 177
PageCatalogPart control, 263
Page.ClientScript property, 475
Page.ClientScript.RegisterClientScriptBlock method, 475
Page.Culture property, 305
Page.DataBind method, 346
Page.InitializeCulture method, 305, 307

Page.LoadControl method, 339–340
pageLoaded event of PageRequestManager class, 494
pageLoading event of PageRequestManager class, 494
Page.Render method, 106
PageRequestManager class of Sys.WebForms
 namespace, 494
Page.RequestQueryString property, 133
Page.Trace object, 408
Page.UICulture property, 299, 305
Page.ViewState property, 123
Panel control
 accessibility considerations, 317, 323
 background image, setting, 205
 hiding/displaying forms with, 205–206
 horizontal alignment, setting, 205
 HTML generated by, 205
 overview of, 205
 properties, 205
parallelization, 81
parent master pages, 51–52
partial methods, 770
partial-page updates
 conditional, 460
 enabling, 458
 enabling (practice), 464–467
 error handling, 462
 overview of, 459
 progress indicators, 462–463, 467–468
 setting up, 459–461
 timing updates of, 463, 469
 triggering, 460–461, 463
PartialViewResult class, 853
PassThrough mode for Literal control, 169
Password method of HtmlHelper class, 858
PasswordRecovery control, 167, 808, 811–812
PasswordRecovery.AnswerLookupError event, 812
PasswordRecovery.UserLookupError event, 812
passwords
 changing, enabling, 808, 812–813
 generating, 815
 hashing, 814
 masking input, 171
 retained by browser, 817
 retrieval, enabling, 808, 811–812
 validating, 815
Path property of HttpCookie class, 131

performance. *See rendering time*
permissions, Windows, 818, 821. *See also* authorization
personalization, troubleshooting, 790. *See also* user
 profiles
personalizing Web Parts, 274
 disabling, 275
 shared personalization, 275
physical memory, setting launch condition for, 431
pictures. *See* images
ports
 for HTTP, 3
 for HTTPS, 3
POST method
 description of, 6
 example of, 10
 when to use, 10
postbacks, 11
 allowing users to cancel, 463, 494
 automatic, 112
 configuring (practice), 116–118
 Timer control intervals and, 463
 from user controls, 333–334
PostBackUrl property of Button control, 248
PostBackValue property, 193
PostedFile property of FileUpload control, 202
PostLogRequest event, 101
practice exercises
 hardware requirements, xxviii
 software requirements, xxviii
practice tests
 installing, xxix
 options for, xxx
 starting software, xxix
 uninstalling, xxxi
precompiling websites, 28, 441–442
PreInit event, 105
PreLoad event, 105
PreRender event, 105
PrevMonthText property of Calendar control, 198
priority of cache items, 77
processor requirement for practice exercises, xxviii
ProcessRequest method of IHttpHandler interface,
 553, 554, 572
product keys, prompting for, 435
ProfileProvider class, 792
profiles
 anonymous, 793, 794–795
 anonymous, enabling (practice), 798–802
 anonymous, migrating, 795
 automatically loading, 797
 custom property types, 794
 defined, 788
 defining, 792
 editing, enabling, 796, 810
 editing, enabling (practice), 798–802
 enabling, 794–795
 enabling (practice), 798–802
 grouping properties, 794
 profile databases, 790
 profile databases, configuring, 791
 properties, specifying, 792
 provider class, configuring, 790
 recognizing, 797
 saving, 796
 setup overview, 789
 setup wizard, 791
 tables, setting up, 791
 time of most recent access, setting, 796
 troubleshooting, 790
Profile.Save method, 796
programmatically applying themes
 practice for, 72
 process for, 67–68
programmatically changing master pages
 practice for, 57–58
 process for, 52–53
progress indicators
 adding, 462
 adding (practice), 467–468
 Cancel button, including, 463
project output groups, 428. *See also* Web Setup Projects
projections, LINQ, 634
Property Pages dialog box, 390
prototypes, class, 508
provider class
 custom, creating, 792
 overview of, 790
provider Web Parts, creating, 269
proxy classes
 overview of, 582
 viewing, 590

Publish Web dialog box

Publish Web dialog box, 419, 424–425
Publish Web Site dialog box, 441
publishing web applications, 418–425. *See also* Web
 Setup Projects
 with Copy Web tool, 439–441
 with custom setup pages, 435–437
 database configuration, 421–423
 to deployment packages, 425
 publish profile, saving, 424–425
 settings, 424–425
 zip file, creating, 423
PUT method, 6

Q

query strings
 character limits, 134
 creating, 135
 defined, 120
 drawbacks of, 133
 encoding, 135
 error tracking with, 393
 parameter access, 133
 reading parameters from, 135
 storing data in (practice), 140
 syntax of, 133
 user modification of, 134
 validating data from, 133, 134
queryable types, 626
querying databases. *See* LINQ; LINQ queries

R

RadioButton control, 172
RadioButton method of HtmlHelper class, 858
RadioButtonList control, 172, 727
RaiseCallbackEvent method for ICallbackEventHandler, 480
RAM requirement for practice exercises, xxviii
Range class, 769
RangeValidator control, 234
RangeValidator.MaximumValue property, 234–235
RangeValidator.MinimumValue property. *See* input
 validation
recognizing returning visitors, 797. *See also* user profiles

Redirect method of Page.Response object, 250–251
RedirectFromLoginPage method of FormsAuthentication class, 814
redirection
 to error pages, 392–393
 overview of, 3
 as page navigation method, 247, 250–251
RedirectResult class, 853
RedirectToRouteResult class, 853
referencing jQuery
 practice for, 543
 process for, 523
referencing web services
 practice for, 590–591
 process for, 580–581
refreshing webpages
 partial-page. *See* partial-page updates
 at timed intervals, 463, 469
@ Register directive, 265, 339, 378
Register.aspx page, 808
registerClass method, 490, 491, 495, 510
RegisterClientScriptBlock method
 of ClientScriptManager control, 480
 of Page object, 475
RegisterContext method of DefaultModel object, 760
registerEnum method of Type class, 490
registering classes
 practice for, 505, 510
 process for, 490, 498
registering client scripts
 for custom web server controls, 501
 dynamically, 475–478
 on page submissions only, 476
 with ScriptManager control, 478–479, 479
registering custom controls, 503
registering events, 493
registering HTTP handlers, 553–554, 555–556
registering HTTP modules, 566, 569–570
registering interfaces, 491
registering namespaces, 504
registering user controls
 globally, 378
 process for, 265, 339
registerNamespace method of Type class, 487
RegisterOnSubmitStatement method of ClientScriptManager object, 478
RegisterRoutes method, 760

registry
 removing keys during uninstallation, 435
 searching for launch conditions, 430
 writing to, with Web Setup Projects, 434–435

Registry editor, 434

Regular Expression Editor, 235

regular expressions, 234–235

RegularExpression class, 769

RegularExpressionValidator control, 234–235

RegularExpressionValidator.ValidationExpression
 property, 234

relational database connections. *See* SqlDataSource
 control

release version, Web.config file for. *See* Web.config
 transformations

remote debugging
 attaching to remote process, 396
 authentication, 395
 process for, 394–396

RemoveAttributes() method, 421

RemoveUserFromRole method of Roles class, 816

Render method
 of Page object, 106
 of Textbox control, 357
 of WebControl class, 361

RenderAction method of HtmlHelper class, 858

RenderBeginTag method of WebControl class, 361

RenderChildren method of WebControl class, 361

RenderContents method of WebControl class, 361

rendering display of controls
 customizing, 370–371
 process for, 357

rendering engine, reverting to previous, 166

rendering time, 42, 80–81, 558. *See also* caching

RenderingCompatibility property of Control
 object, 166

RenderPartial method of HtmlHelper class, 858

RenewTicketIfOld method of FormsAuthentication
 class, 814

Repeater control, 735

representational state transfer services
 calling from AJAX, 606–607
 overview of, 603–606
 security of, 603

Request object, 7

RequestQueryString property of Page object, 133

requests, HTTP
 methods, 5
 Request object, 7
 URLs (Uniform Resource Identifiers), 5
 website name in, 6

Required class, 769

RequiredFieldValidator control, 232

RequireSSL property of FormsAuthentication class, 813

resolving domains. *See* DNS resolution

resource files. *See also* globalization
 creating, 294, 298, 300
 creating manually, 295
 culture designation, 294
 editing, 296, 300
 explicit localization, 298
 generating, 295
 implicit localization, 297–298
 language/culture abbreviations, 294
 manually defining, 298
 naming, 293, 298
 overview of, 293
 testing, 299
 XML markup in, 295

Resources.Resource object, 303

Response object, 7

Response.Cache method, 84

Response.Redirect object, 250–251

responses, HTTP
 components of, 9
 Response object, 7
 status codes, 8

Response.WriteSubstitution method, 84

REST services
 calling from AJAX, 606–607
 overview of, 603–606
 security of, 603

restricting access. *See* authorization

RIAs (rich Internet applications), 453

roles
 access rules for, 806–807
 adding (practice), 822–824
 adding users to, 810, 816
 authorization of, 819
 creating, 816
 deleting, 816
 enabling, 806

roles (*continued*)
enabling (practice), 822–824
finding users in, 816
managing, 816
removing users from, 816
returning list of, 816
Roles class, 816
Roles.AddUserToRole method, 816
Roles.CreateRole method, 816
Roles.DeleteRole method, 816
Roles.FindUsersInRole method, 816
Roles.GetAllRoles method, 816
Roles.GetRolesForUser method, 816
Roles.IsUserInRole method, 816
Roles.RemoveUserFromRole method, 816
RootNode property of SiteMap class, 253
RouteLink method of HtmlHelper class, 858
RouteValueDictionary object, 867
rows, table. *See* TableRow control
RowUpdated event of DbDataAdapter object, 654

S

Save method of Profile object, 796
SaveAs method of FileUpload control, 203
SaveStateComplete event, 106
ScaffoldColumn class, 769
ScaffoldTable class, 769
scavenging settings, 77
screen readers. *See* accessibility
script blocks, 472
ScriptManager control, 409, 458
 vs. ClientScriptManager object, for registering
 scripts, 479
 markup for, 458
 partial-page updates, enabling, 458
 referencing client controls with, 498, 505
 referencing jQuery with, 523
 registering classes with, 492
 registering client scripts with, 478–479, 479
ScriptManagerProxy control, 459
ScriptReference class, 479
scripts, client. *See also* JavaScript; jQuery
 accessibility considerations, 315
 adding to websites (practice), 504, 507
 binding to client-side events, 530–533
calling web services from, 583–585
creating, with script blocks, 472–475
debugging, 396
debugging (practice), 400
dynamically adding, 475–478
embedding in custom controls, 499–502, 516
jQuery references in, 523
overview of, 472
referencing ASP.NET controls in, 475
registering on page submission only, 478
registering with ScriptManager control, 478–479
search engine optimization, 127
security. *See also* authentication; authorization
 of debugging, 390
 of FileUpload control, 203
 of settings inheritance, 820
 SSL, requiring for cookies, 813
 of tracing, 407
 of view state, 124
 web-based, 805
SelectedDate property of Calendar control, 198
SelectedDates property of Calendar control, 198
SelectedDayStyle property of Calendar control, 198
SelectedIndexChanged event of DropDownList
 control, 175, 725
SelectionChanged event of Calendar control, 199
SelectionMode property of Calendar control, 197, 198
SelectMonthText property of Calendar control, 198
selectors, jQuery
 advanced, 524–525
 examples of, 525–526
 overview of, 524
SelectorStyle property of Calendar control, 198
SelectWeekText property of Calendar control, 198
Serializable attribute class
 overview of, 580
 for profile properties, 794
server controls. *See also* custom web server controls;
 data source controls; data-bound controls; HTML
 controls
accessibility, 313–314
adding (practice), 217–223
adding in Source view, 164
adding in Source view (practice), 181–184
adding to forms, 106–107
advantages of, 162
AJAX. *See* AJAX server controls

applying themes to, 68
ASP.NET-generated name, finding, 83
background color, setting, 165
binding properties to data, 367
border color, setting, 165
border style, setting, 165
border width, setting, 165
in client scripts, 475
comparing, 233
composite, 372–376
Content, 47
ContentPlaceHolder, 44, 46
CSS class, assigning, 165
data type verification, 232–233
default events, 109
disabling, 165
disabling themes for, 67
dynamically adding, 105
foreground color, setting, 165
grouping, 205–206
height, setting, 165
vs. HTML controls, 180
HTML location of, 164
HTML rendering of, 163
Image, 65
in JavaScript, 475
JavaScript and, 456
life cycle of, 109
for logons, 807–808
namespace prefix, setting, 369
overview of, 163–164
personalization, enabling, 274
positioning, best practices, 304
properties, attaching to resources, 301–302
properties, precedence order for, 66–67
properties, setting, 165–166
rendering engine, reverting to previous, 166
requiring entry in, 232
skins for. *See* skin files
vs. style sheet, for appearance attributes, 166
Substitution, 84–85
tab order position, setting, 166
themes, enabling, 165
ToolTip, setting, 166
for validation, 229–230
view state, disabling, 124–126
view state persistence, enabling, 165
width, setting, 166

servers
access logging, 5
authentication of, 4, 5
commands, retrieving list of, 6
communication with clients, 3
compression by, 5
deleting resources from, 6
error handling, 4
output caching, 4
overview of, 3
request handling, 4
request verification by, 4
user authorization, 4
server-side state management. *See also* application state; session state
vs. client-side, 121–123
overview of, 143
whether to use, 144
server-side transfers, as page navigation method, 247, 251
Server.Transfer method, 57, 250–251, 251
ServerValidate event of CustomValidator control, 238–240
ServiceContract class, 597
Session_End event, 148
session events, responding to, 147
Session object, 145
Session_Start event, 148
session state
vs. application state, 144
compressing, 150
cookieless, configuring, 147
cookies and, 129, 146
disabling, 146, 149
drawbacks of, 149
initializing variables, 147
mode configuration, 149–150
modes for, 148–149
overview of, 145
reading/writing to, 145
responding to events, 147
storage location of, 145
storing data in (practice), 152–154
for web methods, 579
whether to use, 144
session variables, 49–50
SetActiveView method of View control, 208

SetAuthCookie method of FormsAuthentication class

SetAuthCookie method of FormsAuthentication class, 814
SetFocusOnError property of validation controls, 231
setup projects. *See* Web Setup Projects
Setup.exe file, 438
SharedInfo property, 49
shortcut keys. *See* keyboard shortcuts
shortcut methods for jQuery, 532–533
ShowDayHeader property of Calendar control, 198
ShowGridLines property of Calendar control, 198
ShowNextPrevMonth property of Calendar control, 198
ShowTitle property of Calendar control, 198
SignOut method of FormsAuthentication class, 814
single-file pages
 C# sample, 24–25
 vs. code-behind pages, 23–26
 disadvantages of, 26
 Visual Basic sample, 24
site maps. *See also* site navigation
 accessing nodes, 253
 adding, 253
 adding (practice), 257
 displaying to users, 254–256
 example of, 253
 function of, 253
 overview of, 252
site navigation. *See also* page navigation; site maps
 breadcrumb trail, 256
 as menu, 254, 745–746
 as tree, 255, 741–744
SiteMap class, 253
SiteMap.CurrentNode property, 253
SiteMapDataSource control, 254
 adding (practice), 258
 configuring, 254
 connecting to site navigation data with, 712–713
 filtering data in, 713–714
<siteMapNode> elements
 adding (practice), 257
 explained, 253
SiteMapPath control, 256
 adding (practice), 258
 skipping links with, 314
SiteMap.RootNode property, 253
skin files. *See also* themes
 applying to controls, 166
 creating, 64
 creating (practice), 69–70
 default, 64
 defined, 60, 61
 example of, 64
 images in, 65
 named, 64
 overview of, 64
 vs. style sheets, 64
SkinID property, 64, 68, 166
SkipLinkText property of controls, 314
skipping links for accessibility, 314
SlidingExpiration property of FormsAuthentication class, 814
.sln files
 file extension for, 21
 location of, 22
 settings in, 21
sniffer applications, 11
software requirements for practice exercises, xxviii
Solution Explorer, 22
solution files
 file extension for, 21
 location of, 22
 settings in, 21
solution user options files
 file extension for, 21
 settings in, 21
sorting LINQ query results, 634
SortParameterName attribute of ObjectDataSource control, 696
Source view, 164
SQL databases, LINQ querying. *See* LINQ to SQL
SQL Server Profiler, 388
SqlDataSource control
 caching, 701
 configuring, 698
 data manipulation with, 700–701
 DataSet vs. DataReader, 699
 filtering data with, 701
 ID property, 698
 parameters for, 700–701
 practice exercise, 748–752
 retrieving data with, 699
SqlDataSource.InsertQuery property, 466
SqlMetal.exe, O/R mapping with, 667
SqlProfileProvider class, 790

SQLServer mode for session state, 148
 staging, Web.config file for. *See* Web.config transformations
 Start event, 101
 StartAsync method, 559
 startup project, setting, 382
 state management. *See also* application state; session state; view state
 bandwidth considerations, 122
 client-side vs. server-side, 121–123
 for multiple web servers, 122
 scalability of, 122
 StateServer mode for session state, 148
 static Web Part connections, 269–271
 status codes, HTTP, 3, 8
 decimal point values in, 394
 list of, 393
 setting error pages for, 393–394
 setting error pages for (practice), 399–400
 String object, 76
 StringLength class, 769
 strong typing
 for variables, 49–50
 for views, 859–860
 Style property of controls, 165
 style sheets
 adding to websites, 65–66
 adding to websites (practice), 70
 additional references on, 66
 defined, 60, 61
 example styles, 66
 HTML reference to, 66
 overview of, 65
 referencing in master pages, 54
 vs. skin files, 64
 template for, 65
 StyleSheetTheme attribute, 62
 Substitution control, 84–85
 .suo files
 file extension for, 21
 settings in, 21
 support for book, xxxi
 synchronizing web server files, 440–441
 Sys namespaces (AJAX Library), 484, 485–486
 Sys.Application.Load event, 493
 Sys.Application.notifyScriptLoaded method, 492
 Sys.Component object
 creating, 495–496
 indicating inheritance from, 495
 overview of, 494
 Sys.Component.create method, 498
 Sys.Debug namespace, 409
 System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations namespace, 768–769
 System.Configuration.ConfigurationManager object, 653
 System.Data.Common.DbConnection object, 653
 System.Data.Linq namespace, 631
 System.Data.Linq.Mapping namespace, 631
 System.Data.Objects.ObjectContext object, 675
 System.Data.Services DataService class, 608
 System.Globalization.CultureInfo.GetCultures method, 306
 System.Net.CredentialCache.DefaultCredentials property, 586
 System.Runtime.Serialization namespace, 597
 System.Runtime.Serialization.Json namespace, 640–641
 System.ServiceModel namespace, 597
 System.Web.Mvc.ActionResult class, 836
 System.Web.Mvc.HtmlHelper class, 858–859
 System.Web.Mvc.ViewDataDictionary collection, 855
 System.Web.Profile namespace, 790
 System.Web.Routing namespace, 834
 System.Web.Security.Membership class, 815
 System.Web.Security.Roles class, 816
 System.Web.Services.WebService class, 577
 System.Web.UI.ICallbackEventHandler, 480
 System.Web.UI.WebControls namespace, 687
 System.Web.UI.WebControls.WebParts namespace, 263, 283
 System.Xml.Linq namespace, 630, 639
 Sys.UI.Behavior object
 creating, 502–503
 implementing, 503
 overview of, 494
 Sys.UI.Control object
 overriding initialize method for, 496
 overview of, 494
 Sys.WebForms.PageRequestManager class, 494

T

tab order
accessibility considerations, 316
for controls, 166
for hot spots, 193
TabIndex property of controls, 166
Table control
rows and cells, adding, 187–189
settings inheritance, 187
when to use, 187
Table.Caption property, 315
TableCell control, 187
adding to Table control, 187–189
border width, 189
settings inheritance, 187
TableRow control, 187
adding to Table control, 187–189
settings inheritance, 187
tables. *See also* Table control; TableCell control;
 TableRow control
accessibility considerations, 315
alignment, avoiding, 304
creating, 187
displaying single record, 731–732, 733–734
formatting, 189
headers, creating, 315
layout best practices, 304
uses for, 187
word wrapping, avoiding, 304
TagPrefix attribute for controls, 339
Target property, 193
TCP ports
 for HTTP, 3
 for HTTPS, 3
Telnet, starting/configuring (practice), 12–13
template controls, 331, 723
TemplateControl class, 331
templated binding, 723
templated custom web server controls
 class inheritance, 377
 overview of, 377–378
templated user controls, 340–341
 binding naming containers to layout, 346
 code-behind file for, 342–343
 implementing, 344–347
 markup for, 344
templates
 for Dynamic Data websites, 756, 772, 775–776
 for grouping data, 736
 repeating data with, 735, 740
 for single record display, 733
 for style sheets, 65
testing accessibility, 318–320
testing resource files for other cultures, 299
text color, accessibility considerations, 314
text MIME type, 9
Text property of controls, 167, 168, 188, 230
text size, accessibility considerations, 315
 TextAlign property of TextBox control, 172
TextArea control, 410–411
TextArea method of HtmlHelper class, 859
TextBox control, 107
 associating with Label control, 167
 masking input, 171
 maximum length, setting, 171
 overview of, 171
 size, setting, 171
TextBox method of HtmlHelper class, 859
TextBox.Render method, 357
TextBox.TextChanged event, 171
TextChanged event of TextBox control, 171
TextMode property of controls, 171
Theme property, 67
themes. *See also* skin files
 applying to controls, 68, 165
 creating, 61–62
 creating (practice), 69–73
 defined, 60
 disabling, 67
 dynamically changing, 67–68
 dynamically changing (practice), 72
 global, 63
 images in, 65
 interaction with global themes, 63
 location of, 61
 overview of, 60–61
 precedence order for, 66–67
 programmatically applying, 67–68
 programmatically applying (practice), 72
thread pooling, 558
Tick event of Timer control, 463, 469
time display code samples, 24

Timer control
 adding, 463
 adding (practice), 468–469

Timer.Tick event, 463, 469

TimeSpan objects, 77, 79

<title> tag, 46

TitleFormat property of Calendar control, 198

TitleStyle property of Calendar control, 198

TodayDayStyle property of Calendar control, 198

TodaysDate property of Calendar control, 198

Toolbox
 adding controls from, 164
 adding controls to, 364
 adding controls to (practice), 381
 custom icons, creating, 365

ToolboxBitmap attribute for controls, 365

ToolboxData attribute of controls, 369

ToolTip property of controls, 166, 230

Trace class of Page object, 408

TRACE method, 6

Trace.axd page
 overview of, 405
 viewing cookies with, 131

Trace.Write method, 408

tracing
 AJAX applications, 409
 custom messages, setting, 408
 display options, 404
 enabling, with Web.config file, 405
 enabling, with Web.config file (practice), 415
 enabling, with WSAT, 403–404
 enabling, with WSAT (practice), 415
 overview of, 402
 security considerations, 407
 settings, 404
 for specific pages, 405
 viewing output of, 405–408
 viewing output of (practice), 415

tracking application health. *See* health monitoring

training kit topics, xxvii

Transfer method of Server object, 57, 250–251

Transform mode for Literal control, 169

transformations
 overview of, 419–420
 replacing settings in, 420–421
 settings, adding, 420
 settings, removing, 421

TransformFile attribute of XmlDataSource control, 708–710

TransformSource property of Xml control, 214

translating applications for international markets. *See* globalization; resource files

traversing functions in jQuery, 526, 527–529

TreeView control, 255
 adding (practice), 258
 binding to data sources, 742
 configuring, 742
 example code, 742
 nodes, expanding, 744
 populating, 742–744
 skipping links with, 314
 structure of, 741–742

triggering UpdatePanel controls
 with outside controls, 463
 overview of, 460–461

troubleshooting. *See also* health monitoring; tracing

Twitter site for Microsoft Press, xxxii

Type class (AJAX), 487

Type.callBaseMethod method, 495

typed DataSets, 654

Type.registerEnum method, 490

U

UI. *See* user interface

UILanguage property of Page object, 299, 305

UIHint class, 769

Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs), 5

uninstalling applications, 435

Unload event, 106

Update method of DataAdapter object, 654

UpdateMethod attribute of ObjectDataSource control, 693–694

UpdateMode property of UpdatePanel control, 460

UpdatePanel control, 459–462
 properties, 459–461
 Timer control, adding to, 463, 468–469
 triggering with outside control, 463
 UpdateProgress control, adding to, 462

UpdatePanel.UpdateMode property, 460

UpdateProgress control, 462
 adding (practice), 467–468
 Cancel button, including, 463

UpdateProgress.AssociatedUpdatePanelId property

UpdateProgress.AssociatedUpdatePanelId property, 462
UpdateProgress.DisplayAfter property, 462
UpdateUser method of Membership class, 815
updating webpages
 partial-page. *See* partial-page updates
 at timed intervals, 463, 469
uploading files. *See* FileUpload control
URIs (Uniform Resource Identifiers), 5
URL patterns, 867
URLs
 length limitation, 133
 query strings in. *See* query strings
 sending by email, 134
UseAccessibleHeader property of Calendar control, 199
user accounts. *See also* users
 adding to database, 815
 adding to roles, 810
 centralized control, 822
 creating, 314, 808
 creation page, 808–810
 deleting, 815
 impersonating, 821
 returning list of, 815
 validating, 815
user controls, 323
 @ Control directive, 332
 accessing controls in, 338
 adding (practice), 277, 348–351
 adding controls to, 332
 adding to webpages, 339
 AJAX functionality, 459
 ASCX files, 331
 benefits of, 330
 binding naming containers to layout, 346
 class inheritance, 331
 code-behind file for, 342–343
 creating, 332
 defined, 331
 in Dynamic Data field templates, 773
 dynamically loading, 339–340
 event handlers, 333, 352
 event model, 333
 events, passing to webpage, 334–337
 hosting on webpages (practice), 351–353
 markup for, 339, 344
 naming containers, 340–341
 naming containers, defining, 343
postbacks, 333–334
properties, defining, 337–338
properties, defining (practice), 348–351
properties, markup for, 339
registering, 265, 339
registering globally, 378
templated, 340–343, 344–347
testing (practice), 353
user input controls, 167
user input, validating. *See* input validation
user interface
 common elements of, 43
 consistency of. *See* master pages; user controls
User Interface editor, 436
user names, displaying, 808
user profiles
 anonymous, 793, 794–795
 anonymous, enabling (practice), 798–802
 anonymous, migrating, 795
 automatically loading, 797
 custom property types, 794
 defined, 788
 defining, 792
 editing, enabling, 796, 810
 editing, enabling (practice), 798–802
 enabling, 794–795
 enabling (practice), 798–802
 grouping properties, 794
 profile databases, 790
 profile databases, configuring, 791
 properties, specifying, 792
 provider class, configuring, 790
 recognizing, 797
 saving, 796
 setup overview, 789
 setup wizard, 791
 tables, setting up, 791
 time of most recent access, setting, 796
 troubleshooting, 790
user roles
 access rules for, 806–807
 adding (practice), 822–824
 adding users to, 810, 816
 authorization of, 819
 creating, 816
 deleting, 816
 enabling, 806

enabling (practice), 822–824
 finding users in, 816
 managing, 816
 removing users from, 816
 returning list of, 816
UserControl class, 331
UserLookupError event of **PasswordRecovery**
 control, 812
users. *See also* user accounts
 authentication of, 4
 authorization of, 4, 818–819
 counting, 103
 creating, with WSAT, 804–805
 creating, with WSAT (practice), 822–824
 master page variation for, 52–53
 returning list of, 815
UsersOnline variable, 102

V

Validate method
 of **HtmlHelper** class, 859
 of **Page** object, 230–231
ValidatePage event, 85–86
ValidateUser method of **Membership** class, 815
validating input
 client-side, overview of, 231
 client-side, security of, 229
 with comparison operators, 232–233
 custom code for. *See* custom validation
 framework for, 229–232
 practice for, 241–243
 with regular expressions, 234–235
 requiring field entry, 232
 for sections of pages, 232
 as usability feature, 228
 for user name/passwords, 815
 verifying range of acceptable values, 234
 when to use, 231
validating MVC model, 850–851
validating query string data, 133, 134
validation controls
 adding to webpages, 229–230
 adding to webpages (practice), 241–243
 client-side validation, turning off, 231
 colors, setting, 230

error messages, accessibility of, 317
 error messages, setting, 230
 initial entry, invalidating, 232
 naming, 229
 setting focus on error, 231
 tooltip properties, setting, 230
validation groups, 233
ValidationException object, 851
ValidationExpression property of **RegularExpressionValidator** control, 234
ValidationGroup property of validation controls, 232
ValidationMessage method of **HtmlHelper** class, 859
ValidationSummary control, 230
 on logon pages, 811
 in MVC, 851
ValidationSummary method of **HtmlHelper** class, 859
ValueToCompare property of **CompareValidator**
 control, 233
versioning conflicts with Copy Web tool, 441
versions, HTTP, 5
video card requirement for practice exercises, xxviii
video MIME type, 9
View control. *See also* **MultiView** control
 changing view programmatically, 208
 example code, 208
 overview of, 207
view state
 compressing, 126
 defined, 120
 disabling, 124–126
 encrypting, 124
 hashing data, 122
 MAC (message authentication code), 124
 moving within webpage, 127
 overview of, 123
 search engine optimization considerations, 127
 security considerations, 124
 setting, 106
 size considerations, 124–125
 splitting across multiple fields, 123
 storing data in (practice), 136–137
 Unicode implementations, 123
 writing custom data to, 126–127
ViewData property, 855
ViewResult class, 853
Views folder (MVC), 838
ViewState property of controls, 360

ViewStateEncryptionMode attribute of pages element, 124
ViewStateMode property, 125–126
VisibleDate property of Calendar control, 199
VisibleMonthChanged event of Calendar control, 199
visual accessibility, 314–315
Visual Basic
 event handlers, creating, 109–111
 time display code, 24
Visual Studio 2010, 391–392
Visual Studio designer, creating HTML controls in, 179
Visual Studio Remote Debugging Monitor, 394–396
Visual Studio Solution Explorer, 22

W

WCAG (Web Content Accessibility Guidelines), 313, 315
WCF (Windows Communication Foundation)
 ABCs of, 594
 application layers, 595–596
 architecture of, 595–596
 attribute classes, 597
 contracts, defining, 598
 endpoints, defining, 602
 function of, 594
 JSON services and, 604–606
 namespaces, 597, 601
 overview of, 593
 proxy classes, 601
 REST services and, 603–606
 service application, creating, 612–616
 service, consuming, 600–603, 616–618
 service, implementing, 598–599
 service templates, 597–598
 services, creating, 596–597
WCF Data Services
 class inheritance, 608
 creating, 607–611
web applications
 components of, 3
 health monitoring. *See* health monitoring
 history of, 454
 project files, 22
 publishing, 418–425
 server-client communication, 3

testing accessibility, 319
vs. websites, 16–17
web browsers
 communication with servers, 3
 DNS resolution, 5
 error messages. *See* error pages; HTTP status codes as front-end interface, 3
 HTML display, 5
 language preference, setting, 299
 master page variation for, 52–53
 redirection. *See* redirection
 server authentication, 5
 sniffer add-ons, 11
Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG), 313, 315
Web Deployment Projects, 425–426
web event classes
 configuring, 413–414
 overview of, 412–413
web forms. *See* ASPX pages; forms
web methods
 overview of, 579–580
 session state, enabling/disabling, 579
Web One-Click Publish toolbar, 425
Web Part zones
 creating, 264–265
 defined, 264
 user controls, adding, 266
Web Parts
 authentication, enabling (practice), 278
 catalog for, 262, 267
 chrome, 264
 connecting (practice), 282–286
 connections, overview of, 269
 consumer, creating, 270
 creating, overview of, 265
 creating webpage with (practice), 276–278
 creating, with ASP.NET controls, 266
 creating, with user controls, 265–266
 database for, 264
 defined, 261
 display modes, 267, 267–268
 dynamic connections, 272
 example of, 261, 266
 namespace, 263
 personalization, 274

- personalization (practice), 278–282
personalization, disabling, 275
provider, creating, 269
shared personalization, 275
static connections, 269–271
tables, defining, 791
user editing, enabling, 267, 272–273
user movement of, enabling, 267
uses for, 262–263
when to use, 228
- web server controls. *See also* custom web server controls; data source controls; data-bound controls; HTML controls
accessibility, 313–314
adding (practice), 217–223
adding in Source view, 164
adding in Source view (practice), 181–184
adding to forms, 106–107
advantages of, 162
AJAX. *See* AJAX server controls
applying themes to, 68
ASP.NET-generated name, finding, 83
background color, setting, 165
binding properties to data, 367
border color, setting, 165
border style, setting, 165
border width, setting, 165
in client scripts, 475
comparing, 233
composite, 372–376
Content, 47
ContentPlaceHolder, 44, 46
CSS class, assigning, 165
data type verification, 232–233
default events, 109
disabling, 165
disabling themes for, 67
dynamically adding, 105
foreground color, setting, 165
grouping, 205–206
height, setting, 165
vs. HTML controls, 180
HTML location of, 164
HTML rendering of, 163
Image, 65
in JavaScript, 475
- JavaScript and, 456
life cycle of, 109
for logons, 807–808
namespace prefix, setting, 369
overview of, 163–164
personalization, enabling, 274
positioning, best practices, 304
properties, attaching to resources, 301–302
properties, precedence order for, 66–67
properties, setting, 165–166
rendering engine, reverting to previous, 166
requiring entry in, 232
skins for. *See* skin files
vs. style sheet, for appearance attributes, 166
Substitution, 84–85
tab order position, setting, 166
themes, enabling, 165
ToolTip, setting, 166
for validation, 229–230
view state, disabling, 124–126
view state persistence, enabling, 165
width, setting, 166
- web servers
access logging, 5
authentication of, 4, 5
commands, retrieving list of, 6
communication with clients, 3
compression by, 5
deleting resources from, 6
error handling, 4
output caching, 4
overview of, 3
request handling, 4
request verification by, 4
user authorization, 4
- web services
adding to websites (practice), 541
AJAX support, 583–585
ASMX files, adding, 576
authentication, 586
base class for, 578
benefits of, 575
binding to, 583
buffering, 579
calling, 582–583
calling from client scripts, 583–585

- web services (*continued*)
 - calling with jQuery, 535–537
 - class inheritance, 577
 - creating (practice), 587–590
 - design considerations, 578
 - example code, 576, 578
 - IIS features, 576
 - namespace, setting, 578–579
 - objects used by, 577
 - overview of, 576
 - passing credentials, 586
 - proxy classes, viewing, 590
 - proxy objects and, 580–581
 - referencing, 580–581
 - referencing (practice), 590–591
 - URLs for, 576
- Web Setup Projects
 - building, 428
 - building (practice), 445
 - creating, 427–428
 - creating (practice), 444–446
 - custom actions, adding, 437–438
 - custom setup pages, 435–437
 - deploying web applications with, 438
 - files generated by, 438
 - launch conditions, 429–434
 - Setup.exe file, 438
 - Windows Installer file, 438
 - writing to registry with, 434–435
- Web Site Administration Tool (WSAT)
 - editing configuration files with, 34–35
 - email server configuration with, 812
 - enabling tracing with, 403–404
 - enabling tracing with (practice), 415
 - opening, 403
 - role-based access rules, creating, 806–807
 - user creation with, 804–805
 - user role creation with, 806
- web user controls. *See* user controls
- WebApplicationLifetimeEvent class, 412
- WebAuditEvent class, 413
- WebAuthenticationFailureAuditEvent class, 413
- WebAuthenticationSuccessAuditEvent class, 413
- WebBaseErrorEvent class, 412
- WebBaseEvent class, 412
- Web.config files
 - authorization, configuring, 818
 - case sensitivity of, 48
 - creating (practice), 36–37
 - different versions of, 419–420
 - enabling debugging in, 391
 - enabling debugging in (practice), 398
 - enabling health monitoring in, 413–414
 - enabling tracing in, 402, 405
 - enabling tracing in (practice), 415
 - error page configuration, 392–393
 - file/folder access restrictions, 819–820
 - logon pages, enabling, 811
 - profile property groups in, 794
 - registering controls in, 378
 - registering HTTP handlers with, 555–556, 573
 - registering HTTP modules with, 566
 - user profile fields, defining, 792
 - Windows authentication, enabling, 817
- Web.config transformations
 - overview of, 419–420
 - replacing settings in, 420–421
 - settings, adding, 420
 - settings, removing, 421
- WebControl class, 187, 356
 - creating custom web server controls from, 361–363
 - rendering methods, 361
- WebDAV, 18–19
- WebErrorEvent class, 412
- WebFailureAuditEvent class, 413
- WebHeartbeatEvent class, 412
- WebManagementEvent class, 412
- WebMethodAttribute class, 579–580
- webpages. *See also* ASPX pages
 - adding to websites (practice), 31
 - asynchronous, creating, 564–566
 - disabling themes for, 67
 - dynamically adding controls, 105
 - event handling, 104–106
 - fade-in effect, scripting, 523–524
 - life cycle, 103–112
 - manually releasing resources, 106
 - testing accessibility, 318
 - tracing, 405
- WebPagetest, 388

- WebPartConnection control, 271
 WebPartManager control, 263, 265
 WebPartManager.DisplayMode property, 267
 WebPartZone control, 263, 264–265, 276
 WebRequestErrorEvent class, 413
 WebRequestEvent class, 412
 WebService class, 577, 578
 WebServiceAttribute class, 578–579
website navigation. *See also* page navigation; site maps
 - breadcrumb trail, 256
 - as menu, 254, 745–746
 - as tree, 255, 741–744
 web.sitemap files, 712–713
 websites
 - adding webpages to (practice), 31
 - ASPX pages. *See* ASPX pages
 - code languages in, 25
 - compiling, 28
 - configuration files. *See* configuration files
 - creating, 16
 - creating (practice), 30–31
 - default objects, 22
 - deploying, 418–425
 - error pages. *See* error pages
 - file-system-based, 15, 17–19
 - FTP-based, 15, 21
 - HTTP-based, 15
 - precompiling, 28, 441–442
 - project files, 22
 - special folders, 23
 - as startup project, setting, 382
 - user interface. *See* user interface
 - varying appearance by user. *See* themes
 - vs. web applications, 16–17
 WebSuccessAuditEvent class, 413
 ViewStateFailureAuditEvent class, 413
 WeekendDayStyle property of Calendar control, 199
 Width property of controls, 166
 Windows authentication, 817. *See also* authentication
 Windows Communication Foundation (WCF). *See* WCF (Windows Communication Foundation)
 Windows Installer file, for Web Setup Projects, 438
 Windows permissions, 818, 821. *See also* authorization
 Wizard control
 - adding (practice), 217
 - customizing, 211
- example code, 211–212
 overview of, 210
 skipping links with, 314
 wizards, creating with MultiView controls, 207
 WizardStep control, 210
 word wrapping, avoiding, 304
 Wrap property of Panel control, 205
 Write method of Trace object, 408
 WriteSubstitution method of Response object, 84
 WSAT (Web Site Administration Tool)
 - editing configuration files with, 34–35
 - email server configuration with, 812
 - enabling tracing with, 403–404
 - enabling tracing with (practice), 415
 - opening, 403
 - role-based access rules, creating, 806–807
 - user creation with, 804–805
 - user role creation with, 806
 WSE 3.0, 586

X

- xcopy command, 419
 xdt:Locator property, 420–421
 XElement object, 630
 XML configuration files. *See* configuration files
 Xml control
 - applying XSL transformation file, 214
 - document source, setting, 214
 - example code, 214
 - overview of, 214
 XML files
 - connecting to, 707–710
 - LINQ queries against, 630, 639
 - site maps. *See* site maps
 XML Schema Definition (XSD) files, 657
 XML web services
 - adding to websites (practice), 541
 - AJAX support, 583–585
 - ASMX files, adding, 576
 - authentication, 586
 - base class for, 578
 - benefits of, 575
 - binding to, 583
 - buffering, 579

XmlDataSource control

XML web services (*continued*)
calling, 582–583
calling from client scripts, 583–585
calling with jQuery, 535–537
class inheritance, 577
creating (practice), 587–590
design considerations, 578
example code, 576, 578
IIS features, 576
namespace, setting, 578–579
objects used by, 577
overview of, 576
passing credentials, 586
proxy classes, viewing, 590
proxy objects and, 580–581
referencing, 580–581
referencing (practice), 590–591
URLs for, 576

XmlDataSource control
binding to string values, 707
configuring, 707
filtering XML with, 710
overview of, 707
transforming XML data with, 708–710
XPath attribute of XmlDataSource control, 710
XSD files, 657
XSL transformation files, 214

Z

zip file of project files, creating, 423
zones, Web Part
 creating, 264–265
 defined, 264
 user controls, adding, 266
ZoneTemplate control, 265
<ZoneTemplate> element, 266